# Document History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Alterations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First published</td>
<td>July 1992</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Page numbers relate to the document at the time of Amendment and may not match page numbers in current document.

---

## Document Status

The most recent version of this document, as detailed in the Document History, is approved by the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing. It is effective from 10 October 2011 and supersedes all previous versions of this document.

People using this document should check for amendments on a regular basis. The Department of Building and Housing may amend any part of any document at any time. Up-to-date versions of documents are available from [www.dbh.govt.nz](http://www.dbh.govt.nz)
Preface

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 This preface provides an introduction to building controls in New Zealand. This section shows the relationship between the New Zealand Building Code (the Building Code) and various other Provisions that ensure buildings in New Zealand are safe and healthy to use.

1.2 The preface provides a convenient user reference. However, legal interpretation must be based on the actual wording of the Building Act 2004 (the Building Act), and amendments and respective Building Regulations.

2.0 BUILDING CONTROL FRAMEWORK

The regulation and performance of buildings sits under the following three-part framework.

- The Building Act, which contains the provisions for regulating building work.
- The various Building Regulations, which contain prescribed forms, list specified systems, define ‘change the use’ and ‘moderate earthquake’, and set out the rate of levy and fees for determinations.
- The Building Code, contained in Schedule 1 of the Building Regulations 1992, which sets performance standards all new building work must meet, and covers aspects such as stability, fire safety, access, moisture, safety of users, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

The pyramid below illustrates the legislation that forms the building control framework governed by the Building Act.
2.1 The Building Act 2004

The Building Act provides the mandatory framework for the building control system to be followed when undertaking building work in New Zealand. It applies to all:

- buildings including Crown buildings, except those which may be exempt for reasons of national security
- components in a building, including plumbing, electrical and mechanical installations.

The Building Act should be read taking into account the changes under the Building Amendment Act 2005 and any subsequent amendments (copies are on www.legislation.govt.nz).

2.1.1 Purpose

The Building Act aims to improve control of and encourage better practices in building design and construction to provide greater assurance to consumers.

This means:

- more clarity on the standards we expect buildings to meet
- more guidance on how these standards can be met
- more certainty that capable people are undertaking building design, construction and inspection
- more scrutiny in the building consent and inspection process
- better protection for homeowners through the introduction of mandatory warranties.

The purpose of the Building Act is:

- to provide for regulation of building work
- to ensure that people can use buildings safely without endangering their health
- to ensure people can escape a building in case of fire
- to ensure buildings have attributes that contribute appropriately to the health, physical independence and wellbeing of the people who use them
- to ensure buildings are designed, constructed and able to be used in ways that promote sustainable development.

2.1.2 Principles

The Building Act does not contain an equivalent to section 47 of the Building Act 1991 (the former Act), which contained guidance on how a territorial authority should exercise its powers.

Under section 4 of the Building Act (section 6 under the former Act), principles to be applied in performing functions or duties, or exercising powers under the Building Act, now have greater importance. Section 4 should be taken into account when performing functions, duties or exercising powers relating to the granting of waivers or modifications of the Building Code, and the adoption and review of policies on dangerous, earthquake-prone or insanitary buildings.

The Building Act re-states many of the principles outlined in the former Act, and makes explicit some of the implied principles of that legislation (for example, that innovation is important). However, some significant new concepts have been introduced, including a particular focus on the household unit, as well as considering the whole-of-life costs of building work.

The following is a summary of the Building Act principles.

- Household units have an important role in the lives of the people who use them, and are accorded a special focus.
- The Building Code as it relates to household units is important, and household units need to comply with the Building Code.
- Maintenance requirements of household units need to be reasonable, and owners of household units need to be aware of the maintenance requirements of their household units.
- Harmful effects on human health resulting from the use of building methods, products, design or building work need to be prevented or minimised.
• Buildings need to be durable.
• Special traditional and cultural aspects of the intended use of a building need to be recognised.
• The whole-of-life costs of a building need to be considered.
• Standards are important in achieving compliance with the Building Code for building design and construction.
• Innovation in methods of building design and construction is important.
• People who undertake a rescue operation or firefighting in a building need to be able to expect a reasonable level of protection from injury or illness while doing so.
• The extent and effects of the spread of fire need to be limited to protect other household units and other property.
• Other property needs to be protected from physical damage resulting from the construction, use and demolition of a building.
• People with disabilities need to be able to enter and carry out normal activities and processes in a building.
• Buildings of significant cultural, historical or heritage value need to be preserved.
• Energy use in buildings needs to be efficient.
• The use of renewable sources of energy needs to be encouraged.
• Material use in buildings needs to be efficient and sustainable.
• Water use in buildings needs to be efficient and promote water conservation.
• Waste generated during the construction process needs to be reduced.

2.1.3 Application
The Building Act applies to:
• building construction, alteration, demolition or removal
• maintenance of a building’s specified systems, such as lifts and fire protection installations.
The Building Act does not cover:
• planning and resource management
• occupational safety and health.

2.1.4 Structure
The Building Act has five parts.
Part 1: Contains the purpose and principles of the Building Act, together with an overview, commencement dates for various Provisions and definitions. These sections provide an important reference when reading and interpreting the Building Act.
Part 2 (and Schedules 1 and 2): Outlines matters relating to the Building Code and building control (such as building consents), including requirements of building work, requirements for the use of buildings, Provisions for certain categories of buildings and Provisions for the safety of dams.
Part 3: Sets out the functions, duties and powers of the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing (the Department), territorial authorities, regional authorities and building consent authorities. It also deals with the accreditation and registration of building consent authorities, accreditation of dam owners, and product certification.
Part 4 (and Schedule 3): Covers matters relating to the licensing and disciplining of building practitioners.
Part 5 (and Schedule 4): Describes miscellaneous matters, including offences and criminal proceedings, implied terms of contracts, regulation-making powers, amendments to other enactments and the repeal of the former Act, and the transitional Provisions from the former Act to the Building Act.
2.2 Building Regulations

Building Regulations are made under and in accordance with the Building Act.

A number of regulations have been made under the Building Act. Currently (as at May 2007) there are seven sets of regulations.

1. Building Regulations 1992, made under the former Act and which include the Building Code. These regulations have been amended by the Building (Forms) Regulations 2004 so that only certain parts remain in force. Parts still in force are: Schedule 1 (Building Code), Regulation 3, Forms 16 & 17 (and Regulation 4 and Schedule 2 where they relate to these forms).

2. Building (Forms) Regulations 2004, as amended by the Building (Forms) Amendment Regulations 2005, which prescribes forms to be used under the Building Act.

   - Specified systems – the building systems that must be listed on compliance schedules and are subject to specific inspection and maintenance procedures. Schedule 1 provides the list of specified systems.
   - Change the use – to determine when a change in a building’s use will require upgrading to meet certain requirements of the Building Act. Schedule 2 determines the use of all or parts of buildings.
   - Moderate earthquake – to define a moderate earthquake in relation to a building.

4. Building (Fee for Determinations) Regulations 2005
5. Building Levy Order 2005
7. Building (Consent Authority Accreditation Fees) Regulations 2007
8. Building (Designation of Building work Licence Classes) Order 2007
9. Building (Design Work Declared to be Building Work) Order 2007
10. Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2007
13. Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2008
15. Building Practitioners (Complaints and Disciplinary Procedures) Regulations 2008
17. Building (Building Consent Authority Transition) Order 2008
18. Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2009
20. Building (Designation of Building Work Licensing Classes) Order 2010
21. Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2010
22. Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2010
23. Canterbury Earthquake (Building Act) order 2010
24. Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2011

Note: these regulations can be found at www.legislation.govt.nz

2.3 The New Zealand Building Code

2.3.1 Content

The Building Code sets out performance criteria that building work must meet. It covers aspects such as structural stability, fire safety, access, moisture control, durability, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

The Building Code does not prescribe how work should be done, but states how completed building work and its parts must perform.

An advantage of a performance-based Building Code is flexibility. It contains no prescriptive requirements stipulating that certain products or designs must be used. This flexibility allows developments and innovation in building design, technology and systems.

2.3.2 Structure

The Building Code consists of two preliminary clauses and 35 technical clauses. Each technical clause has three levels that describe the requirements for the clause and is listed below.

1. Objective Social objectives the building must achieve.

2. Functional requirement Functions the building must perform to meet the Objective.

3. Performance The performance criteria the building must achieve. By meeting the performance criteria, the Objective and Functional requirement can be achieved.
3.0 COMPLIANCE PATHS

Compliance with the Building Code can be demonstrated using various pathways. Understanding the New Zealand building control framework will help a building consent applicant decide which path is most suitable when designing and constructing building work.

The diagram below illustrates the hierarchy of New Zealand building controls, including the various compliance paths.

The top three tiers of the pyramid (the Building Act and Building Regulations) show mandatory building legislation that must be followed, as explained in the previous section.

The rest of the diagram shows various paths that may be used to demonstrate compliance with the Building Code. Compliance with the Building Code must be demonstrated using one or more of the paths. The applicant can choose which path(s) to follow.

With the exception of alternative solutions, the paths illustrated on the previous page must be accepted by the building consent authority as meeting the performance requirements of the Building Code. These pathways are discussed below.

3.1 Compliance Documents

Compliance Documents provide details for construction that, if followed, result in compliance with the Building Code. They are published by the Department. (Note: Compliance Documents were previously known as Approved Documents, and were published by the former Building Industry Authority.)

A design that complies with Compliance Documents must be accepted by a building consent authority as complying with the Building Code.

There is one Compliance Document for each of the 35 technical clauses in the Building Code. Each Compliance Document contains at least a Verification Method or an Acceptable Solution, and usually has both. However, some Compliance Documents have more than one Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example, the Compliance Document for Clause B1 of the Building Code has two Verification Methods and three Acceptable Solutions.

Verification Methods and Acceptable Solutions are usually referred to by their Building Code clauses and unique identification numbers. Some examples are listed below.

- The Acceptable Solutions for Clause E2 External Moisture are known as E2/AS1, E2/AS2 and E2/AS3.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G1 Personal Hygiene is known as G1/AS1.
- The Verification Methods for Clause B1 Structure are known as B1/VM1 and B1/VM4.

3.1.1 Verification Methods

Verification Methods are tests or calculation methods that prescribe one way to comply with the Building Code. Verification Methods can include:

- calculation methods: using recognised analytical methods and mathematical models
- laboratory tests: using tests (sometimes to destruction) on prototype components and systems
- tests-in-situ: which may involve examination of plans and verification by test, where compliance with specified numbers, dimensions or locations is required (non-destructive tests, such as pipe pressure tests, are also included).

3.1.2 Acceptable Solutions

These are simple step-by-step instructions that show one way to comply with the Building Code.

3.2 Product certification

The Building Act contains provisions for a voluntary product certification scheme that will enable product manufacturers to have their products certified as meeting nominated Performance requirements of the Building Code.
Building products or methods that are used in accordance with a product certificate as provided by section 269 of the Building Act must be accepted as complying with the Building Code.

3.3 Energy work certificate
Energy work is defined as gasfitting work or prescribed electrical work. An energy work certificate certifies that energy work complies with either the Electricity Act 1992 or the Gas Act 1992.
An energy work certificate must be accepted as establishing compliance with the relevant Performance requirements of the Building Code.

3.4 New Zealand Standard NZS 4121
Section 119 of the Building Act specifies that NZS 4121, the code of practice for design for access and use of buildings by persons with disabilities (and any modification of that Standard), is to be taken as a Compliance Document.

3.5 Determinations
A determination is a binding decision made by the Department. It provides a way of solving disputes or answering questions relating to the Building Code and territorial authority/building consent authority/regional authority decisions under the Building Act.

A range of matters can be determined, including:
- whether a building or building work complies with the Building Code
- a building consent authority’s decision on a building consent, a notice to fix, a code compliance certificate (CCC) or a compliance schedule
- a territorial authority’s decision to issue a building consent subject to a waiver or modification
- a territorial authority’s decision on a certificate of acceptance, a compliance schedule, a notice to fix, or a certificate for public use
- a regional authority’s or territorial authority’s exercise or failure to exercise its powers under the Building Act.

3.6 Alternative solutions
An alternative solution is a building solution that differs, in part or wholly, from the solutions offered by the Compliance Documents (an Acceptable Solution or Verification Method), but achieves compliance with the performance requirements of the Building Code to the satisfaction of the building consent authority.

There may be a number of reasons for the use of an alternative solution.
- There may not be a Compliance Document for the proposed construction, for example, if no Compliance Document is available for on-site effluent disposal.
- The building work may incorporate unusual design features that fall outside the scope of a Compliance Document.

Whatever the reason for using an alternative solution, the Building Code, being performance-based, allows for innovation and applicants have the freedom to propose an innovative solution. Refer to 2.3 ‘The New Zealand Building Code’.

3.7 Producer statements
A producer statement is a statement supplied by or on behalf of an applicant for a building consent, or by or on behalf of a person who has been granted a building consent. It is a statement that certain work will be, or has been, carried out in accordance with certain technical specifications.

Producer statements were introduced by the former Act and are no longer expressly referred to in the Building Act. A building consent authority may, at their discretion, accept and consider a producer statement as part of the plans or specifications for a building consent. This will assist the building consent authority in deciding whether it is satisfied on reasonable grounds the provisions of the Building Code will be met if the building work is completed in accordance with the plans and specifications. A building consent authority should have a formal procedure or policy in place for the use and consideration of producer statements, especially if a producer statement(s) will be required to prove building work complies with a building consent.
4.0 THE PARTIES AND THEIR RESPONSIBILITIES

Five principal parties are responsible for ensuring that buildings are safe and sanitary in line with the Building Act.

4.1 The Department of Building and Housing (the Department)

The Department has a range of statutory responsibilities for building and housing, and administers New Zealand’s building legislation. The Department’s building control functions include:

- advising the Minister for Building and Construction on matters relating to building control
- administering and reviewing the Building Code
- producing and maintaining Compliance Documents that specify prescriptive methods as a means of complying with the Building Code
- providing information, guidance, and advice on building controls to all sectors of the building industry and consumers
- implementing, administering and monitoring a system of regulatory controls for a vibrant sector with skilled building professionals
- making determinations, or technical rulings, on matters of interpretation, doubt or dispute.

4.2 Territorial authorities

Territorial authorities are responsible for enforcing the Building Act, Regulations and the Building Code in their areas of jurisdiction. They are responsible for:

- gaining accreditation as a building consent authority
- registering as a building consent authority
- performing the functions of a building consent authority

- issuing project information memoranda
- granting waivers or modifications of the Building Code (not including waivers or modifications relating to access and facilities for people with disabilities)
- issuing certificates of acceptance
- issuing certificates for public use
- determining the extent to which buildings must comply with the Building Code if they are altered, or their use is changed or where there is a specified intended life change
- enforcing the provisions relating to annual building warrants of fitness
- issuing certain notices provided for under the Building Act
- keeping records
- ensuring dangerous, insanitary and earthquake prone buildings are identified and appropriate action taken to remove any danger or insanitary condition
- amending compliance schedules
- carrying out other functions and duties specified in the Building Act.

4.3 Building consent authorities

Building consent authorities are responsible for:

- issuing building consents
- inspecting building work for which they granted a building consent
- issuing notices to fix
- issuing code compliance certificates
- issuing compliance schedules and amending them where the specified systems are affected by building work
- carrying out other functions and duties specified in the Building Act.
4.4 Regional authorities

Regional authorities are responsible for:

- performing the functions of a building consent authority to the extent that those functions relate to dams
- considering and approving dam classifications
- considering and approving dam safety assurance programmes
- administering the Building Act, relating to dam classifications, dam safety assurance programmes and dam compliance certificates
- enforcing provisions of the Building Code and the Building Act and regulations that relate to dams
- adopting a policy on dangerous dams.

4.5 Building owners

Building owners are responsible for:

- detailing work proposals on plans and specifications, including proposals for the inspection and routine maintenance of the specified systems for the purposes of the compliance schedule (if applicable)
- applying for building consents (and amendments to building consents) and project information memoranda
- constructing buildings in accordance with the ‘approved plans and specifications’
- organising inspections at given stages as building work progresses
- collecting energy work certificates
- applying for a code compliance certificate as soon as any work carried out under a building consent granted to them is completed
- maintaining buildings in a safe and sanitary manner
- ensuring any specified systems in their building are performing and will continue to perform to the performance standards
- supplying the annual building warrant of fitness, if applicable
- notifying the territorial authority if a change of use, extension of life, or subdivision is proposed
- paying any fees as required by the Building Act.

4.6 Licensed building practitioners

The Building Act set up a licensed building practitioners (LBP) scheme to promote, recognise and support professional skills and behaviour in the building industry. The scheme has seven licence classes covering designers, site supervisors and trades people, such as carpenters, roofers, plasterers and bricklayers.

To become licensed, building practitioners must show they meet the standard for the licence class appropriate for them. Details of LBPs are held on a public register at www.dbh.govt.nz/lbp-register

Once licensed, LBPs are responsible for notifying territorial authorities of breaches of building consents.

From March 2012, it is expected that restricted building work on houses and small-medium sized apartment buildings will only be able to be carried out or supervised by LBPs. Restricted building work is design and building work that is critical to the integrity of a house or small-medium sized apartment building. It will cover aspects of the primary structure, external moisture management and fire design.

From March 2012:

- any plans and specifications containing restricted building work (relating to design work) must be accompanied by a memorandum issued by the LBP who carried out or supervised the design work, stating that the design work complies with the Building Code
if an application for a building consent relates to restricted building work, the names of the LBPs carrying out or supervising that work must be given to the building consent authority in the application (if known) or once the work commences, or when the application for the code compliance certificate is made. The most up-to-date information on the LBP scheme is at www.dbh.govt.nz/lbp

4.7 Past building control parties

4.7.1 The Building Industry Authority
The Building Industry Authority (the Authority) was a Crown entity, established under the former Act as the sole regulatory authority for building controls in New Zealand. The introduction of the Building Act 2004 has seen the dissolution of the Authority and transfer of its responsibilities to the Department.

4.7.2 Building certifier
A building certifier was a person approved by the Authority under the former Act to issue building certificates with respect to specific provisions of the Building Code. A building certifier may have been employed by a building owner as an alternative to using the territorial authority for checking technical proposals and performing inspections. Building certifiers are not provided for under the Building Act except for certain transitional arrangements.

5.0 BUILDING COMPLIANCE PROVISIONS

5.1 Project information memoranda (sections 31 to 39)
A project information memorandum (PIM) provides information known to the territorial authority/regional authority about land, and requirements of the Building Act and other Acts that might be relevant to proposed building work. A PIM is specific to the site and project. A PIM is a legal document and may have a notice attached to it requiring the owner to obtain other approvals or consents required by other legislation, such as the Resource Management Act 1991, prior to any work commencing on the project. For example, a PIM might include the fact that the height of a building may contravene a rule in the District Plan, meaning that before work commences, a separate resource consent is required from the territorial authority planning unit.

An application for a building consent is deemed to include an application for a PIM, unless one has been previously issued for the project and this is supplied with the building consent application. In most cases, PIMs and building consents are applied for in a single application. They will be processed as separate applications, but may be issued separately or jointly.

If the application for a PIM affects a registered historic place, historic area, wahi tapu, or wahi tapu area, and a PIM has not been issued for the building work to which the application applies, then the territorial authority must notify the New Zealand Historic Places Trust within five days after receiving the application.

If the territorial authority considers a development contribution under the Local Government Act 2002 is payable by the owner, it may attach a notice (Form 3) that advises the applicant that a code compliance certificate will not be issued until the development contribution is paid.

5.2 Building consents (sections 40 to 52)
A building consent is the formal approval, under section 49 of the Building Act, permitting an applicant to undertake building work in accordance with the plans and specifications approved by the building consent authority. Building work is the construction, alteration, demolition or removal of a building and includes sitework.

A person cannot carry out building work except in accordance with a building consent. There are some exemptions (see sections 41 and 43 and Schedule 1 of the Building Act), but section 17 still requires building work to be carried out in accordance with the Building Code, even if no building consent is required.
5.2.1 Alterations (Section 112)

Where proposed building work involves an alteration to an existing building, the consent must not be granted unless the building consent authority is satisfied that all new building work complies with the Building Code and:

- the altered building will comply as nearly as is reasonably practicable with the Building Code provisions for means of escape from fire and access and facilities for people with disabilities, and
- the altered building will continue to comply with the other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as before the alteration.

However, a territorial authority may allow the alteration of an existing building without complying with provisions of the Building Code specified by the territorial authority, if the territorial authority is satisfied that:

- if the building were required to comply with the relevant provisions of the Building Code, the alterations would not take place, and
- the alteration will result in improvements to attributes of the building that relate to means of escape from fire or access and facilities for persons with disabilities, and
- the improvements mentioned above outweigh any detriment that is likely to arise as a result of the building not complying with the relevant provisions of the Building Code.

5.2.2 Change of use (sections 114 and 115)

Uses of buildings are defined in Schedule 2 of the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Regulations 2005.

A change of use arises when two criteria are met. The first criterion is that a building’s use must change from one use in Schedule 2 to a different use in Schedule 2. The second criterion is the result of that change (first criterion) means the requirements for compliance with the Building Code for the new use are additional to, or more onerous than, the requirements for the old use.

See Regulations 5 and 6 of the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Regulations 2005.

An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority/Regional authority if they propose to change the use of a building.

Where the owner proposes to change the use of a building to one or more household units, where household units did not exist before, they must obtain written notice from the territorial authority. This must state that the territorial authority is satisfied, on reasonable grounds, that the building, in its new use, will comply as nearly as is reasonably practicable, with the Building Code in all respects (usually through the issue of a building consent).

For any other change of use proposal, the owner must get written notice from the territorial authority/regional authority, stating that the authority is satisfied, on reasonable grounds, that the building, in its new use, will comply as nearly as is reasonably practicable, with every provision of the Building Code that relates to either or both of the following matters:

- means of escape from fire, protection of other property, sanitary facilities, structural performance, and fire-rating performance
- access and facilities for people with disabilities (if this is a requirement under section 118 of the Building Act).

The territorial authority/regional authority must also be satisfied that the building will continue to comply with the other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as before the change of use.

5.2.3 Extension of life (sections 114 and 116)

Where a building with a specified intended life is issued with a building consent that is subject to the condition that the building be altered before the end of its life, an ‘extension of life’ can be obtained.

An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority/Regional authority if it proposes to extend the life of a building.
The territorial authority/regional authority can only give its consent to the extension of life if it is satisfied that:

- the building has been altered in accordance with the original condition
- the alteration complies with section 112 of the Building Act (Alterations).

5.2.4 Subdivision (sections 114 and 116A)

An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority if it proposes to subdivide land in a manner that affects a building.

The territorial authority can only issue a certificate under section 224(f) (relating to cross lease, company lease, and unit titles) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for the purpose of giving effect to a subdivision affecting a building or part of a building, if it is satisfied that the building will comply as nearly as reasonably practicable with every provision of the Building Code that relates to one or more of the following:

- Means of escape from fire
- Access and facilities for people with disabilities
- Protection of other property

The building must also continue to comply with other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as it did before the application for subdivision was made.

5.2.5 Access for persons with disabilities (sections 117 to 120 and Schedule 2)

Any building (including parts of a building such as a driveway) that is open to the public, whether or not they are charged for entry, must have reasonable and adequate provision for access, parking and sanitary facilities for people with disabilities who may be expected to work or visit that building and carry out normal activities and processes in that building.

The most recent version of NZS 4121 Code of Practice for Design for Access and Use of Buildings by Persons with Disabilities is to be taken as a Compliance Document.

5.3 Code compliance certificate (sections 91 to 95)

A code compliance certificate (CCC) is a formal statement, issued under section 95 of the Building Act, which states that building work carried out under a building consent application complies with that building consent. A CCC provides assurance to the owner and subsequent property owners that the approved plans and specifications have been followed.

A CCC is not issued until all building work has been completed as per the plans and specifications submitted with the building consent application.

A CCC must be applied for after all building work carried out under a building consent granted to the owner is completed.

An application for a CCC where the building work was carried out under a consent granted under the former Act must be considered and determined as if the Building Act had not been passed. However, section 43(2) of the former Act must be read as if a CCC may only be issued if the territorial authority is satisfied that the building work complies with the Building Code that applied at the time the building consent was granted.

5.4 Certificates of acceptance (sections 96 to 99)

Certificates of acceptance were introduced by the Building Act. The certificate confirms that, to the extent an inspection was able to be carried out, the building work complies with the Building Code. A certificate of acceptance therefore has some similarities to a CCC in that it will provide some verification for a building owner, or future building owner, that all or part of the work is compliant.
A certificate of acceptance can be obtained in situations where:

- work has been done without a building consent when one should have been obtained
- a building consent authority or building certifier is unable or refuses to issue a CCC
- verification is required of urgent building work carried out under section 42 of the Building Act.

A certificate of acceptance can also be used in limited circumstances in relation to section 363B.

A certificate of acceptance is based on verification with the Building Code that was in place at the time of application. It is not based on what was in place at the time a building consent was granted, or should have been applied for, or when the work was actually carried out.

5.5 Notices to fix
(sections 163 to 168)

A notice to fix is a statutory notice requiring a person to remedy a breach of the Building Act or Regulations under the Act. A notice to fix can be issued for all breaches of the Building Act, including non-complying building work, and for an incorrect building warrant of fitness or a compliance schedule that is not being properly complied with. A notice to fix can state that all or any building work must cease immediately.

A building consent authority, regional authority or a territorial authority must issue a notice to fix for any contravention of the Building Act and Building Regulations under section 164 of the Building Act. When a notice to fix has been issued by a building consent authority that is not a territorial authority or a regional authority, the matter is then handed to the territorial authority or regional authority to decide whether the notice has been complied with.

Some examples of where notices could be issued include:

- carrying out building work other than in accordance with a building consent
- displaying an incorrect building warrant of fitness
- changing the use of a building without notifying the territorial authority or regional authority.

5.6 Compliance schedules
(sections 100 to 107)

A compliance schedule lists specified systems within a building. The compliance schedule for a building must identify which specified systems are present, the performance standards for those systems, and how those systems will be inspected and maintained to ensure they continue to function.

For more information on compliance schedules, see the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

5.7 Building warrants of fitness
(sections 108 to 111)

A building warrant of fitness (BWoF) is a statement supplied by a building owner, to the territorial authority confirming that the systems specified in the compliance schedule for their building have been maintained and checked in accordance with the compliance schedule for the previous 12 months, and will continue to perform as required. For more information on building warrants of fitness, see the Compliance Schedule Handbook.
5.8 Certificates for public use  
(section 363A)

A certificate for public use is a new safety provision under the Building Act. It is a tool that can be used to certify that premises or parts of premises affected by building work are safe to be used by the public. Certificates for public use can only be used where a building consent has been granted for the building work but no CCC has yet been issued. Certificates for public use do not relieve the owner of a building from the obligation to apply for a CCC after all the building work has been carried out.

5.9 Building certificate

A building certificate was a formal confirmation by a building certifier that specific aspects of a building would or do comply with the Building Code. A territorial authority was obliged to accept such a certificate. Building certificates were allowed for under the former Act, but are only included under the new Building Act as transitional allowances to phase them out.
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A General Provisions</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>G Services and Facilities</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1 Classified uses</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>G1 Personal hygiene</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2 Interpretation</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>G2 Laundering</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B Stability</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>G3 Food preparation and prevention</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1 Structure</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2 Durability</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>G4 Ventilation</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C Fire Safety</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>G5 Interior environment</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1 Outbreak of fire</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>G6 Airborne and impact sound</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2 Means of escape</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>G7 Natural light</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3 Spread of fire</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>G8 Artificial light</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4 Structural stability during fire</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>G9 Electricity</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D Access</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1 Access routes</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>G10 Piped services</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2 Mechanical installations for access</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>G11 Gas as an energy source</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E Moisture</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>G12 Water supplies</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1 Surface water</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>G13 Foul water</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2 External moisture</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>G14 Industrial liquid waste</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3 Internal moisture</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>G15 Solid waste</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F Safety of Users</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>H Energy Efficiency</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1 Hazardous agents on site</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2 Hazardous building materials</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3 Hazardous substances and</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>processes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F4 Safety from falling</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5 Construction and demolition</td>
<td>49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hazards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F6 Visibility in escape routes</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7 Warning systems</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F8 Signs</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A General Provisions

CLAUSE A1—CLASSIFIED USES

1.0 EXPLANATION

1.0.1 For the purposes of this building code buildings are classified according to type, under seven categories.

1.0.2 A building with a given classified use may have one or more intended uses as defined in the Act.

2.0 HOUSING

2.0.1 Applies to buildings or use where there is self care and service (internal management). There are three types:

2.0.2 Detached Dwellings

Applies to a building or use where a group of people live as a single household or family. Examples: a holiday cottage, boarding house accommodating fewer than 6 people, dwelling or hut.

2.0.3 Multi-unit Dwelling

Applies to a building or use which contains more than one separate household or family. Examples: an attached dwelling, flat or multi-unit apartment.

2.0.4 Group Dwelling

Applies to a building or use where groups of people live as one large extended family. Examples: within a commune or marae.

3.0 COMMUNAL RESIDENTIAL

3.0.1 Applies to buildings or use where assistance or care is extended to the principal users. There are two types:

3.0.2 Community Service

Applies to a residential building or use where limited assistance or care is extended to the principal users. Examples: a boarding house, hall of residence, holiday cabin, [backcountry hut], hostel, hotel, motel, nurses’ home, retirement village, time-share accommodation, a work camp, or camping ground.

3.0.3 Community Care

Applies to a residential building or use where a large degree of assistance or care is extended to the principal users. There are two types:

(a) Unrestrained; where the principal users are free to come and go. Examples: a hospital, an old people’s home or a health camp.

(b) Restrained; where the principal users are legally or physically constrained in their movements. Examples: a borstal or drug rehabilitation centre, an old people’s home where substantial care is extended, a prison or hospital.

4.0 COMMUNAL NON-RESIDENTIAL

4.0.1 Applies to a building or use being a meeting place for people where care and service is provided by people other than the principal users. There are two types:

4.0.2 Assembly Service

Applies to a building or use where limited care and service is provided. Examples: a church, cinema, clubroom, hall, museum, public swimming pool, stadium, theatre, or whare runanga (the assembly house).

**CLAUSE A1—CLASSIFIED USES** (continued)

4.0.3 Assembly Care

Applies to a building or use where a large degree of care and service is provided. Examples: an [early childhood education and care centre], college, day care institution, centre for handicapped persons, kindergarten, school or university.

5.0 COMMERCIAL

5.0.1 Applies to a building or use in which any natural resources, goods, services or money are either developed, sold, exchanged or stored. Examples: an amusement park, auction room, bank, car-park, catering facility, coffee bar, computer centre, fire station, funeral parlour, hairdresser, library, office (commercial or government), police station, post office, public laundry, radio station, restaurant, service station, shop, showroom, storage facility, television station or transport terminal.

6.0 INDUSTRIAL

6.0.1 Applies to a building or use where people use material and physical effort to:

(a) extract or convert natural resources,

(b) produce goods or energy from natural or converted resources,

(c) repair goods, or

(d) store goods (ensuing from the industrial process).

Examples: an agricultural building, agricultural processing facility, aircraft hanger, factory, power station, sewage treatment works, warehouse or utility.

7.0 OUTBUILDINGS

7.0.1 Applies to a building or use which may be included within each classified use but are not intended for human habitation, and are accessory to the principal use of associated buildings. Examples: a carport, farm building, garage, greenhouse, machinery room, private swimming pool, public toilet, or shed.

8.0 ANCILLARY

8.0.1 Applies to a building or use not for human habitation and which may be exempted from some amenity provisions, but which are required to comply with structural and safety-related aspects of the building code. Examples: a bridge, derrick, fence, free standing outdoor fireplace, jetty, mast, path, platform, pylon, retaining wall, tank, tunnel or dam.

CLAUSE A2—INTERPRETATION

This Clause of the New Zealand Building Code lists defined words used within the Code.
Those definitions, plus defined word or terms used in the Compliance Documents, are included in the section on definitions in this Handbook.
### Clause B1—Structure

#### Objective

B1.1 The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from injury caused by structural failure,
(b) Safeguard people from loss of amenity caused by structural behaviour, and
(c) Protect other property from physical damage caused by structural failure.

#### Functional Requirement

B1.2 Buildings, building elements and sitework shall withstand the combination of loads that they are likely to experience during construction or alteration and throughout their lives.

#### Performance

B1.3.1 Buildings, building elements and sitework shall have a low probability of rupturing, becoming unstable, losing equilibrium, or collapsing during construction or alteration and throughout their lives.

B1.3.2 Buildings, building elements and sitework shall have a low probability of causing loss of amenity through undue deformation, vibratory response, degradation, or other physical characteristics throughout their lives, or during construction or alteration when the building is in use.

B1.3.3 Account shall be taken of all physical conditions likely to affect the stability of buildings, building elements and sitework, including:

- Self-weight,
- Imposed gravity loads arising from use,
- Temperature,
- Earth pressure,
- Water and other liquids,
- Earthquake,
- Snow,
- Wind,
- Fire,
### CLAUSE B1—STRUCTURE (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(j) Impact,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) Explosion,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l) Reversing or fluctuating effects,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m) Differential movement,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n) Vegetation,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(o) Adverse effects due to insufficient separation from other buildings,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(p) Influence of equipment, services, non-structural elements and contents,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(q) Time dependent effects including creep and shrinkage, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(r) Removal of support.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.3.4</strong> Due allowance shall be made for:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) The consequences of failure,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) The intended use of the building,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Effects of uncertainties resulting from construction activities, or the sequence in which construction activities occur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Variation in the properties of materials and the characteristics of the site, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Accuracy limitations inherent in the methods used to predict the stability of buildings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.3.5</strong> The demolition of buildings shall be carried out in a way that avoids the likelihood of premature collapse.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.3.6</strong> Sitework, where necessary, shall be carried out to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Provide stability for construction on the site, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Avoid the likelihood of damage to other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.3.7</strong> Any sitework and associated supports shall take account of the effects of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Changes in ground water level,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Water, weather and vegetation, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Ground loss and slumping.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CLAUSE B2—DURABILITY</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2.1 The objective of this provision is to ensure that a building will throughout its life continue to satisfy the other objectives of this code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2.2 Building materials, components and construction methods shall be sufficiently durable to ensure that the building, without reconstruction or major renovation, satisfies the other functional requirements of this code throughout the life of the building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2.3.1 Building elements must, with only normal maintenance, continue to satisfy the performance requirements of this code for the lesser of the specified intended life of the building, if stated, or:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) The life of the building, being not less than 50 years, if:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Those building elements (including floors, walls, and fixings) provide structural stability to the building, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Those building elements are difficult to access or replace, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would go undetected during both normal use and maintenance of the building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 15 years if:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Those building elements (including the building envelope, exposed plumbing in the subfloor space, and in-built chimneys and flues) are moderately difficult to access or replace, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would go undetected during normal use of the building, but would be easily detected during normal maintenance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Performance B2.3.1 applies from the time of issue of the applicable code compliance certificate. Building elements are not required to satisfy a durability performance which exceeds the specified intended life of the building.
**CLAUSE B2—DURABILITY** (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(c) 5 years if:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) The building elements (including services, linings, renewable protective coatings, and fixtures) are easy to access and replace, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would be easily detected during normal use of the building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B2.3.2</strong> Individual building elements which are components of a building system and are difficult to access or replace must either:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) All have the same durability, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Be installed in a manner that permits the replacement of building elements of lesser durability without removing building elements that have greater durability and are not specifically designed for removal and replacement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CLAUSE C1—OUTBREAK OF FIRE

### Provisions

#### OBJECTIVE

C1.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by fire.

#### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

C1.2 In buildings fixed appliances using the controlled combustion of solid, liquid or gaseous fuel, shall be installed in a way which reduces the likelihood of fire.

#### PERFORMANCE

C1.3.1 Fixed appliances and services shall be installed so as to avoid the accumulation of gases within the installation and in building spaces, where heat or ignition could cause uncontrolled combustion or explosion.

C1.3.2 Fixed appliances shall be installed in a manner that does not raise the temperature of any building element by heat transfer or concentration to a level that would adversely affect its physical or mechanical properties or function.

### Limits on application
CLAUSE C2—MEANS OF ESCAPE

OBJECTIVE

C2.1 The objective of this provision is to:
(a) Safeguard people from injury or illness from a fire while escaping to a safe place, and
(b) Facilitate fire rescue operations.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

C2.2 Buildings shall be provided with [means of escape from fire] which:
(a) Give people adequate time to reach a safe place without being overcome by the effects of fire, and
(b) Give fire service personnel adequate time to undertake rescue operations.

PERFORMANCE

C2.3.1 The number of open paths available to each person escaping to an exitway or final exit shall be appropriate to:
(a) The travel distance.
(b) The number of occupants,
(c) The fire hazard, and
(d) The fire safety systems installed in the firecell.
C2.3.2 The number of exitways or final exits available to each person shall be appropriate to:
(a) The open path travel distance,
(b) The building height,
(c) The number of occupants,
(d) The fire hazard, and
(e) The fire safety systems installed in the building.
C2.3.3 Escape routes shall be:
(a) Of adequate size for the number of occupants,
(b) Free of obstruction in the direction of escape,

Limits on application

Performance C2.3.3(b) must not prevent a door that forms part of an escape route from being locked if the person who locks it is satisfied that no one is in that part of the building served by the escape route and that no one is likely to enter that part of the building, except in an emergency, without unlocking that door.
### CLAUSE C2—MEANS OF ESCAPE (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(c) Of length appropriate to the mobility of the people using them,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Resistant to the spread of fire as required by Clause C3 “Spread of Fire”,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Easy to find as required by Clause F8 “Signs”,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Provided with systems for visibility during failure of the main lighting, as required by Clause F6 “Visibility in escape routes”, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Easy and safe to use as required by Clause D1.3.3 “Access Routes”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clause C2.3.3(f) was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 6(3) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).
**CLAUSE C3—SPREAD OF FIRE**

**OBJECTIVE**

C3.1 The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from injury or illness when evacuating a building during fire.

(b) Provide protection to fire service personnel during firefighting operations.

(c) Protect adjacent household units[, other residential units,] and other property from the effects of fire.

(d) Safeguard the environment from adverse effects of fire.

**FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

C3.2 Buildings shall be provided with safeguards against fire spread so that:

(a) Occupants have time to escape to a safe place without being overcome by the effects of fire,

(b) Firefighters may undertake rescue operations and protect property,

(c) Adjacent household units[, other residential units,] and other property are protected from damage, and

(d) Significant quantities of hazardous substances are not released to the environment during fire.

**PERFORMANCE**

C3.3.1 Interior surface finishes on walls, floors, ceilings and suspended building elements, shall resist the spread of fire and limit the generation of toxic gases, smoke and heat, to a degree appropriate to:

(a) The travel distance,

(b) The number of occupants,

(c) The fire hazard, and

(d) The active fire safety systems installed in the building.

---

Clause C3.1(c) was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(3) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by inserting after the words “‘household units’”, the words “‘, other residential units.’”.
**CLAUSE C3—SPREAD OF FIRE** (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.2 Fire separations</strong> shall be provided within buildings to avoid the spread of fire and smoke to:</td>
<td>[Performance C3.3.2(b) does not apply to Detached Dwellings or within household units of Multi-unit Dwellings.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Other firecells,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Spaces intended for sleeping, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Household units within the same building or adjacent buildings.</td>
<td>Performance C3.3.4 shall not apply to Detached Dwellings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[d) other property.]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.3 Fire separations</strong> shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where openings occur, be provided with fire resisting closures to maintain the integrity of the fire separations for an adequate time, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Where penetrations occur, maintain the fire resistance rating of the fire separation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.4 Concealed spaces and cavities</strong> within buildings shall be sealed and subdivided where necessary to inhibit the unseen spread of fire and smoke.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.5 External walls and roofs</strong> shall have resistance to the spread of fire, appropriate to the fire load within the building and to the proximity of other household units[, other residential units,] and other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.6 Automatic fire suppression systems</strong> shall be installed where people would otherwise be:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Unlikely to reach a safe place in adequate time because of the number of storeys in the building,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Required to remain within the building without proceeding directly to a final exit, or where the evacuation time is excessive,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Unlikely to reach a safe place due to confinement under institutional care because of mental or physical disability, illness or legal detention, and the evacuation time is excessive, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) At high risk due to the fire load and fire hazard within the building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clause C3.2(c) was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(4) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by inserting after the words “‘household units’”, the words “‘, other residential units,‘”.

Clause C3.3.2 was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(5) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by adding the following paragraph: “‘(d) other property’” and repealing, adjacent to clause C3.3.2 in the column headed “'Limits on application'”, the words “‘Performance C3.3.2 shall not apply to Detached Dwellings, or within household units of Multi-unit Dwellings.’” and inserting, adjacent to clause C3.3.2(b) in the column headed “'Limits on application'”, the words “‘Performance C3.3.2(b) does not apply to Detached Dwellings or within household units of Multi-unit Dwellings.’”

Clause C3.3.5 was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(6) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by inserting after the words “‘household units’”, the words “‘, other residential units,’”.
## CLAUSE C3—SPREAD OF FIRE (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.7</strong> Air conditioning and mechanical ventilation systems shall be constructed to avoid circulation of smoke and fire between firecells.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.8</strong> Where an automatic smoke control system is installed, it shall be constructed to:</td>
<td>[Performance C3.3.9 does not apply to backcountry huts.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Avoid the spread of fire and smoke between firecells, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Protect escape routes from smoke until the occupants have reached a safe place.</td>
<td>(Performance C3.3.10 applies only to buildings where significant quantities of hazardous substances are stored or processed.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.9</strong> The fire safety systems installed shall facilitate the specific needs of fire service personnel to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Carry out rescue operations, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Control the spread of fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.10</strong> Environmental protection systems shall ensure a low probability of hazardous substances being released to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Soils, vegetation or natural waters,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) The atmosphere, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Sewers or public drains.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CLAUSE C4—STRUCTURAL STABILITY DURING FIRE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.1 The objective of this provision is to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from injury due to loss of structural stability during fire, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Protect household units and other property from damage due to structural instability caused by fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.2 Buildings shall be constructed to maintain structural stability during fire to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Allow people <em>adequate</em> time to evacuate safely,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Allow fire service personnel <em>adequate</em> time to undertake rescue and firefighting operations, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Avoid collapse and consequential damage to adjacent household units or other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.3.1 Structural elements of buildings shall have fire resistance appropriate to the function of the elements, the fire load, the fire intensity, the fire hazard, the height of the buildings and the fire control facilities external to and within them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.3.2 Structural elements shall have a fire resistance of no less than that of any element to which they provide support within the same <em>firecell</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.3.3 Collapse of elements having lesser fire resistance shall not cause the consequential collapse of elements required to have a higher fire resistance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D Access

CLAUSE D1—ACCESS ROUTES

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

D1.1 The objective of this provision is:

(a) Safeguard people from injury during movement into, within and out of buildings,

(b) Safeguard people from injury resulting from the movement of vehicles into, within and out of buildings, and

(c) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to enter and carry out normal activities and functions within buildings.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

D1.2.1 Buildings shall be provided with reasonable and adequate access to enable safe and easy movement of people.

D1.2.2 Where a building is provided with loading or parking spaces, they shall be constructed to permit safe and easy unloading and movement of vehicles, and to avoid conflict between vehicles and pedestrians.

PERFORMANCE

D1.3.1 Access routes shall enable people to:

(a) Safely and easily approach the main entrance of buildings from the apron or construction edge of a building,

(b) Enter buildings,

(c) Move into spaces within buildings by such means as corridors, doors, stairs, ramps and lifts,

(d) Manoeuvre and park cars, and

(e) Manoeuvre and park delivery vehicles required to use the loading space.

D1.3.2 At least one access route shall have features to enable people with disabilities to:

(a) Approach the building from the street boundary or, where required to be provided, the building car park,

(b) Have access to the internal space served by the principal access, and

(c) Have access to and within those spaces where they may be expected to work or visit, or which contain facilities for personal hygiene as required by Clause G1 “Personal Hygiene”.

Limits on application

Objective D1.1(c) shall apply only to those buildings to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Requirement D1.2.1 shall not apply to Ancillary buildings or Outbuildings.

Performance D1.3.2 shall not apply to Housing, Outbuildings, [backcountry huts], Ancillary buildings, and to Industrial buildings where no more than 10 people are employed.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
**CLAUSE D1—ACCESS ROUTES** (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1.3.3</strong> Access routes shall:</td>
<td>Performance D1.3.3(h) shall not apply within <em>Industrial buildings</em>, <em>Outbuildings</em> and <em>Ancillary buildings</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Have adequate activity space,</td>
<td>Performance D1.3.3(i) shall not apply with <em>Detached Dwellings</em> or within <em>household units of Multi-unit Dwellings</em>, or to <em>Outbuildings</em> and <em>Ancillary buildings</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Be free from dangerous obstructions and from any projections likely to cause an obstruction,</td>
<td>Performance D1.3.3(j) shall not apply to isolated steps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Have a safe cross fall, and safe slope in the direction of travel,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Have adequate slip-resistant walking surfaces under all conditions of normal use,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Include stairs to allow access to upper floors irrespective of whether an escalator or lift has been provided,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Have stair treads, and ladder treads or rungs which:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) provide adequate footing, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) have uniform rise within each flight and for consecutive flights,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Have stair treads with a leading edge that can be easily seen,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Have stair treads which prevent children falling through or becoming held fast between treads, where open risers are used,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Not contain isolated steps,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) Have smooth, reachable and graspable <em>handrails</em> to provide support and to assist with movement along a stair or ladder,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) Have <em>handrails</em> of adequate strength and rigidity as required by Clause B1 &quot;Structure&quot;,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l) Have landings of appropriate dimensions and at appropriate intervals along a stair or ramp to prevent undue fatigue,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m) Have landings of appropriate dimensions where a door opens from or onto a stair, ramp or ladder so that the door does not create a hazard, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n) Have any automatically controlled doors constructed to avoid the risk of people becoming caught or being struck by moving parts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Note:**
- Performance D1.3.3(h) shall not apply within *Industrial buildings*, *Outbuildings* and *Ancillary buildings*.
- Performance D1.3.3(i) shall not apply with *Detached Dwellings* or within *household units of Multi-unit Dwellings*, or to *Outbuildings* and *Ancillary buildings*.
- Performance D1.3.3(j) shall not apply to isolated steps.
CLAUSE D1—ACCESS ROUTES (continued)

Provisions

D1.3.4 An accessible route, in addition to the requirement of Clause D1.3.3, shall:

(a) Be easy to find, as required by Clause F8 “Signs”,

(b) Have adequate activity space to enable a person in a wheelchair to negotiate the route while permitting an ambulant person to pass,

(c) Include a lift complying with Clause D2 “Mechanical Installations for Access” to upper floors where:
   (i) buildings are four or more storeys high,
   (ii) buildings are three storeys high and have a total design occupancy of 50 or more persons on the two upper floors,
   (iii) buildings are two storeys high and have a total design occupancy of 40 or more persons on the upper floor, or
   (iv) an upper floor, irrespective of design occupancy, is to be used for the purposes of public reception areas of banks, central, regional and local government offices and facilities, hospitals, medical and dental surgeries and medical, paramedical and other primary health care centres,

(d) Contain no thresholds or upstands forming a barrier to an unaided wheelchair user,

(e) Have means to prevent the wheel of a wheelchair dropping over the side of the accessible route,

(f) Have doors and related hardware which are easily used,

(g) Not include spiral stairs, or stairs having open risers,

(h) Have stair treads with leading edge which is rounded, and

(i) Have handrails on both sides of the accessible route when the slope of the route exceeds 1 in 20. The handrails shall be continuous along both sides of the stair, ramp and landing except where the handrail is interrupted by a doorway.

Limits on application

ARCHIVED
### CLAUSE D1—ACCESS ROUTES (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1.3.5</strong> Vehicle spaces and circulation routes shall have:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Dimensions appropriate to the <em>intended use</em>,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Appropriate crossfall, and slope in the direction of travel,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Adequate queuing and circulation space, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Adequate sight distances.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1.3.6</strong> Vehicle spaces for use by <em>people with disabilities</em>, shall,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in addition to the requirements of Clause D1.3.5, be:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Provided in sufficient numbers,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Located to avoid conflict between vehicles and people using or moving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to or from the space, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Easy to find as required by Clause F8 Signs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Archived
## CLAUSE D2—MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS FOR ACCESS

### OBJECTIVE

**D2.1** The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from injury and loss of amenity while using mechanical installations for movement into, within and out of buildings,

(b) Safeguard maintenance personnel from injury while servicing mechanical installations for access, and

(c) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

**D2.2** Mechanical installations for access into, within and out of buildings shall provide for the safe and easy movement of people, and for the safety of maintenance personnel.

### PERFORMANCE

**D2.3.1** Mechanical installations for access shall:

(a) Move people safely, and stop and hold as required for the normal use of the installation, for all loads up to and including 25% in excess of the rated load,

(b) Not produce excessive acceleration or deceleration,

(c) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of people falling, tripping, becoming caught, being able to touch or be struck by moving parts, sharp edges or projections, under both normal and reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions of use,

(d) Be constructed to prevent collision between components, or between components and the building,

(e) Have a control system that ensures safe abnormal operation in the event of overloading or failure of any single component, and

(f) Be capable of being isolated for inspection, testing and maintenance.

### Limits on application

Objective D2.1(c) shall apply only to those buildings to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

The limits on application to clause D2.1(c) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression "section 47A of the Act" for the expression "section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975".
Provisions

D2.3.2 Mechanical installations for access shall be provided with:

(a) Adequate control over normal use, to ensure people’s safety throughout any operation involving starting, stopping or changing the direction of travel,

(b) Notification of position, where people are fully enclosed and the installation serves more than two levels,

(c) Adequate lighting and ventilation for both normal and emergency use, and

(d) Signs as required by Clause F8 “Signs”,

D2.3.3 Mechanical installations for access shall, for emergency purposes, be provided with a means of:

(a) Calling outside help,

(b) Releasing people safely,

(c) Safeguarding people from exposure to hazardous situations, and

(d) Allowing authorised personnel to override the normal running procedure and take exclusive control of the installation.

D2.3.4 Potentially dangerous equipment shall be located in spaces which:

(a) Are secure from unauthorised entry and contain only equipment associated with the installation,

(b) Are appropriately sized and suitably guarded to provide adequate safe working areas for maintenance personnel,

(c) Are provided with adequate power and lighting for maintenance, and

(d) Have an environment that ensures the safe operation of the equipment under all likely conditions of use.

Limits on application

Performance D2.3.3(d) shall not apply to installations travelling less than 15m vertically.
### Clause D2—Mechanical Installations for Access (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2.3.5</strong> Mechanical installations on accessible routes shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where the passenger conveyor is manually controlled, provide:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) controls which are easily identifiable and easy to use,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) adequate notification that the passenger conveyor has registered a summoning call, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) adequate notification that the passenger conveyor has arrived, and of its future direction of travel,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Where the passenger conveyor is fully enclosed and serves more than two levels, provide an adequate means of informing occupants of their location,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Where appropriate, have doors which:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) are power operated,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) are readily distinguishable from their surroundings, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) where automatic, remain open sufficiently long to enable people with disabilities to pass through, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Have handrails within the passenger conveyor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**E Moisture**

### CLAUSE E1—SURFACE WATER

#### OBJECTIVE

**E1.1** The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from injury or illness, and other property from damage, caused by surface water, and

(b) Protect the outfalls of drainage systems.

#### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

**E1.2** Buildings and sitework shall be constructed in a way that protects people and other property from the adverse effects of surface water.

#### PERFORMANCE

**E1.3.1** [Except as otherwise required under the Resource Management Act 1991 for the protection of other property, surface water], resulting from [an event] having a 10% probability of occurring annually and which is collected or concentrated by buildings or sitework, shall be disposed of in a way that avoids the likelihood of damage or nuisance to other property.

**E1.3.2** Surface water, resulting from [an event] having a 2% probability of occurring annually, shall not enter buildings.

**E1.3.3** Drainage systems for the disposal of surface water shall be constructed to:

(a) Convey surface water to an appropriate outfall using gravity flow where possible,

(b) Avoid the likelihood of blockages,

(c) Avoid the likelihood of leakage, penetration by roots, or the entry of ground water where pipes or lined channels are used,

(d) Provide reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages,

(e) Avoid the likelihood of damage to any outfall, in a manner acceptable to the network utility operator, and

(f) Avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movements.

---

Clause E1.3.1 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 3(2)(e) and (f) Building Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the words “Except as otherwise required under the Resource Management Act 1991 for the protection of other property, surface water” for the words “Surface water”.

Clause E1.3.1 was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(7) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by substituting the words “an event” for the words “a storm”.

Clause E1.3.2 was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(8) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by substituting the words “an event” for the words “a storm”.

Performance E1.3.2 shall apply only to Housing, Communal Residential and Communal Non-residential buildings.
[CLAUSE E2—EXTERNAL MOISTURE]

**OBJECTIVE**

E2.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or injury that could result from external moisture entering the building.

**FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

E2.2 Buildings must be constructed to provide adequate resistance to penetration by, and the accumulation of, moisture from the outside.

**PERFORMANCE**

E2.3.1 Roofs must shed precipitated moisture. In locations subject to snowfalls, roofs must also shed melted snow.

E2.3.2 Roofs and exterior walls must prevent the penetration of water that could cause undue dampness, damage to building elements, or both.

E2.3.3 Walls, floors, and structural elements in contact with, or in close proximity to, the ground must not absorb or transmit moisture in quantities that could cause undue dampness, damage to building elements, or both.

E2.3.4 Building elements susceptible to damage must be protected from the adverse effects of moisture entering the space below suspended floors.

E2.3.5 Concealed spaces and cavities in buildings must be constructed in a way that prevents external moisture being accumulated or transferred and causing condensation, fungal growth, or the degradation of building elements.

E2.3.6 Excess moisture present at the completion of construction must be capable of being dissipated without permanent damage to building elements.

Limits on application

Requirement E2.2 does not apply to buildings (for example, certain bus shelters, and certain buildings used for horticulture or for equipment for washing motor vehicles automatically) if moisture from the outside penetrating them, or accumulating within them, or both, is unlikely to impair significantly all or any of their amenity, durability, and stability.

Clause E2 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 4 Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).
[CLAUSE E2—EXTERNAL MOISTURE (continued)]

Provisions

E2.3.7 Building elements must be constructed in a way that makes due allowance for the following:

(a) the consequences of failure:
(b) the effects of uncertainties resulting from construction or from the sequence in which different aspects of construction occur:
(c) variation in the properties of materials and in the characteristics of the site.
### [Clause E3—Internal Moisture](#)

#### Objective

**E3.1** The objective of this provision is to—

- (a) Safeguard people against illness, injury, or loss of amenity that could result from accumulation of internal moisture; and
- (b) Protect household units and other property from damage caused by free water from another household unit in the same building.

#### Functional Requirement

**E3.2** Buildings must be constructed to avoid the likelihood of—

- (a) Fungal growth or the accumulation of contaminants on linings and other building elements; and
- (b) Free water overflow penetrating to an adjoining household unit; and
- (c) Damage to building elements caused by the presence of moisture.

#### Performance

**E3.3.1** An adequate combination of thermal resistance, ventilation, and space temperature must be provided to all habitable spaces, bathrooms, laundries, and other spaces where moisture may be generated or may accumulate.

**E3.3.2** Freewater from accidental overflow from sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances must be disposed of in a way that avoids loss of amenity or damage to household units or other property.

**E3.3.3** Floor surfaces of any space containing sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances must be impervious and easily cleaned.

**E3.3.4** Wall surfaces adjacent to sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances must be impervious and easily cleaned.

**E3.3.5** Surfaces of building elements likely to be splashed or become contaminated in the course of the intended use of the building, must be impervious and easily cleaned.

**E3.3.6** Surfaces of building elements likely to be splashed must be constructed in a way that prevents water splash from penetrating behind linings or into concealed spaces.

---

Clause E3 was substituted, as from 14 October 2004, by regulation 3 Building Amendment Regulations 2004 (SR 2004/317).
### Limits on application

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by hazardous agents or contaminants on a site.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1.2 Buildings shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of people within the building being adversely affected by hazardous agents or contaminants on the site.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1.3.1 Sites shall be assessed to determine the presence and potential threat of any hazardous agents or contaminants.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1.3.2 The likely effect of any hazardous agent or contaminant on people shall be determined taking account of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) The intended use of the building,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) The nature, potency or toxicity of the hazardous agent or contaminant, and,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) The protection afforded by the building envelope and building systems.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CLAUSE F2—HAZARDOUS BUILDING MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and illness caused by exposure to hazardous building materials.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2.2 Building materials which are potentially hazardous, shall be used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in ways that avoid undue risk to people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2.3.1 The quantities of gas, liquid, radiation or solid particles emitted</td>
<td>Performance F2.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by materials used in the construction of buildings, shall not give rise</td>
<td>does not apply to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to harmful concentrations at the surface of the material where the</td>
<td>Housing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>material is exposed, or in the atmosphere of any space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2.3.2 Transparent panels capable of being mistaken for an unimpeded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path of travel shall be marked to make them visible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2.3.3 Glass or other brittle materials with which people are likely to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come into contact shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) If broken on impact, break in a way which is unlikely to cause injury</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or (b) Resist a reasonably foreseeable impact without breaking, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Be protected from impact.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CLAUSE F3—HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES AND PROCESSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness, and other property from damage, caused by hazardous substances or processes in buildings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3.2 Buildings where hazardous substances are stored and hazardous processes undertaken, shall be constructed to provide adequate protection to people and to other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3.3 Spaces in buildings where hazardous substances are stored, handled or used, or where hazardous processes are undertaken, shall be located and constructed to protect people, and other property, under both normal and reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions, and shall be provided with:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Means of restricting unauthorised access,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Means of preventing hazardous substances, or other materials unacceptable to the network utility operator, from entering sewers or public drains,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Means of allowing the harmless release of pressure where there is a significant risk of explosion occurring,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Protected ignition sources where flammable or explosive goods are stored,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Means of rendering harmless by ventilation, containment, dilution, or chemical or biological action, any radioactive, toxic or flammable vapours, gases or materials which may escape from pipes, vessels or containers,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Impervious, easily cleaned surface finishes on building elements likely to be splashed or become contaminated in the course of the intended use of the building, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Signs as required by Clause F8 “Signs”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Clause F4—Safety from Falling

### Objective

F4.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury caused by falling.

### Functional Requirement

F4.2 Buildings shall be constructed to reduce the likelihood of accidental fall.

### Performance

F4.3.1 Where people could fall 1 metre or more from an opening in the external envelope or floor of a building, or from a sudden change of level within or associated with a building, a barrier shall be provided.

F4.3.2 Roofs with permanent access shall have barriers provided.

F4.3.3 Swimming pools having a depth of water exceeding 400mm, shall [have barriers provided].

F4.3.4 Barriers shall:

(a) Be continuous and extend for the full extent of the hazard,
(b) Be of appropriate height,
(c) Be constructed with adequate rigidity,
(d) Be of adequate strength to withstand the foreseeable impact of people and, where appropriate, the static pressure of people pressing against them,
(e) Be constructed to prevent people from falling through them, and

(f) In the case of a swimming pool, restrict the access of children under 6 years of age to the pool or the immediate pool area.

(g) Restrict the passage of children under 6 years of age when provided to guard a change of level in areas likely to be frequented by them.

### Limits on application

Performance F4.3.1 shall not apply where such a barrier would be incompatible with the intended use of an area, or to temporary barriers on construction sites where the possible fall is less than 3 metres [. or to buildings providing pedestrian access in remote locations where the route served presents similar natural hazards].

Performance F4.3.3 shall not apply to any pool exempted under section 5 of the Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987.

[Performance F4.3.4(f) shall not apply to any pool exempted under section 5 of the Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987.]

Clause F4.3.1 was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(9) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by adding, to the entry adjacent to clause F4.3.1 in the column headed “Limits on application”: “or to buildings providing pedestrian access in remote locations where the route served presents similar natural hazards”.

Clause F4.3.3 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 5(1) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the words “have barriers provided” for the words “be constructed with a barrier to restrict access to the pool or the immediate pool area, by children under 6 years of age”.

Clause F4.3.4 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 5(2) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting para (f), inserting the text opposite para (f), and inserting para (g).

Clause F4.3.4(h) was inserted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 5 Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).
### CLAUSE F4—SAFETY FROM FALLING (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[(h) Be constructed so that they are not readily able to be used as seats.]</td>
<td>[Performance F4.3.4(h) does not apply to Housing.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F4.3.5</strong> Barriers to swimming pools shall have in addition to performance F4.3.4:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) All gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by children, and constructed to automatically close and latch when released from any stationary position 150mm or more from the closed and secured position, but excluding sliding and sliding-folding doors that give access to the immediate pool surround from a building that forms part of the barrier, and]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) No permanent objects on the outside of the barrier that could provide a climbing step.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clause F4.3.5 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 5(3) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting para (a).
Objective

F5.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury, and other property from damage, caused by construction or demolition site hazards.

Functional Requirement

[F5.2] Construction and demolition work on buildings shall be performed in a manner that avoids the likelihood of:

(a) Objects falling onto people on or off the site,
(b) Objects falling on property off the site,
(c) Other hazards arising on the site affecting people off the site and other property, and
(d) Unauthorised entry of children to hazards on the site.

Performance

F5.3.1 Suitable construction methods shall be used to avoid the likelihood of tools or materials falling onto places where people might be present.

F5.3.2 Where construction or demolition work presents a hazard in places to which the public has access, barriers shall be provided and shall:

(a) Be of appropriate height and construction to prevent site hazards from harming traffic or passersby,
(b) Be difficult to climb,
(c) Have no opening other than those approved by the territorial authority for access and viewing,
(d) Have no gates or doors which project beyond the site when opened,
(e) Contain no projection that would be a hazard to traffic or people, and
(f) Be clearly marked where the barrier itself may otherwise present a hazard to traffic or passersby.

Clause F5 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 6 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the expression “F5.2” for the expression “F5” immediately under the heading “FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT.”
**CLAUSE F5—CONSTRUCTION AND DEMOLITION HAZARDS** (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F5.3.3</strong> Where a <em>construction</em> or demolition site contains any hazard which might be expected to attract the unauthorised entry of children, the hazard shall be enclosed to restrict access by children.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F5.3.4</strong> Suitable barriers shall be constructed to provide a safe route for people where lifting equipment creates a risk of accident from objects falling on a place of public access, or where a similar risk results from the height at which <em>construction</em> or demolition work is being carried out.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
[CLAUSE F6—VISIBILITY IN ESCAPE ROUTES]

**OBJECTIVE**

F6.1 The objective of this provision is to help safeguard people from injury in escape routes during failure of the main lighting.

**FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

F6.2 Specified features in escape routes must be made reasonably visible by lighting systems, other systems, or both, during failure of the main lighting.

**PERFORMANCE**

F6.3.1 Specified features in escape routes must, when the systems for visibility are at their design level, be reasonably visible.

F6.3.2 The systems for visibility must operate to the following percentages of their design levels within the following times after failure of the main lighting:

- (a) 80% in 0.5 seconds in locations (examples of which are given by performance F6.3.3) where there is a high risk of injury due to delay in operation of the systems for visibility; and
- (b) 10% in 0.5 seconds, and 80% in 30 seconds, in stairs and in locations that are unfamiliar to users; and
- (c) 10% in 20 seconds, and 80% in 60 seconds, in all other locations.

Limits on application

Requirement F6.2 does not apply to Detached Dwellings, household units within Multi-unit Dwellings, Outbuildings, [backcountry huts,] or Ancillary buildings.

Performance F6.3.1 does not apply to specified features in the initial 20 metres of an escape route if the risk of injury, or impediment to movement of people, due to the specified features not being visible is low (for example, because people are familiar with the escape route, the escape route is level, and people do not require assistance to escape).


Clause F6.2 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 7(1) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the word “Ancillary” for the word “Ancilliary”.

Clause F6.3.1 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 7(2) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by inserting the words “or 30 minutes, whichever is the greater”.

Clause F6 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 6(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).
### CLAUSE F6—VISIBILITY IN ESCAPE ROUTES (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F6.3.3</strong> Examples of locations (referred to in performance F6.3.2(a)) where there is a high risk of injury due to delay in operation of the systems for visibility include:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) areas where dangerous machinery is installed:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) areas where hazardous processes take place:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) clinical areas of hospitals:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) prisons and other buildings in which people are detained:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) any part of an escape route designed for use at any time by more than 250 people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F6.3.4</strong> The systems for visibility must operate continuously in buildings or parts of buildings in the following risk groups for the following periods after failure of the main lighting:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) risk group A, until restoration of the main lighting system:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) risk group B, 90 minutes:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) risk group C, 30 minutes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F6.3.5</strong> Despite performance F6.3.4, if a building or part of a building falls into both risk group A and risk group B, the systems for visibility must operate for whichever is the longer of the periods specified in performance F6.3.4(a) and (b).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F6.3.6</strong> Signs to indicate escape routes must be provided as required by Clause F8 “Signs”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CLAUSE F7—WARNING SYSTEMS

OBJECTIVE

F7.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness due to lack of awareness of an emergency.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F7.2 Buildings shall be provided with appropriate means of warning people to escape to a safe place [in an emergency].

PERFORMANCE

F7.3.1 A means of warning must alert people to the emergency in adequate time for them to reach a safe place.

F7.3.2 Appropriate means of detection and warning for fire must be provided within each household unit.

F7.3.3 Appropriate means of warning for fire and other emergencies must be provided in buildings as necessary to satisfy the other performance requirements of this code.

Limits on application

Performance F7.3 does not apply to Out-buildings, backcountry huts, or Ancillary buildings.

Clause F7.2 was amended, as from 24 April 2003, by regulation 3(1) Buildings Amendment Regulations (SR 2003/61) by adding the words “in an emergency”.

Clause F7.3 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 8 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the word “Ancilliary” for the word “Ancillary”.

Clause F7.3 was substituted, as from 24 April 2003, by regulation 3(2) Buildings Amendment Regulations (SR 2003/61).

## CLAUSE F8—SIGNS

### OBJECTIVE

**F8.1** The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from injury or illness resulting from inadequate identification of escape routes, or of hazards within or about the building,

(b) Safeguard people from loss of amenity due to inadequate direction, and

(c) Ensure that people with disabilities are to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

**F8.2** Signs shall be provided in and about buildings to identify:

(a) Escape routes,

(b) Emergency related safety features,

(c) Potential hazards, and

(d) Accessible routes and facilities for people with disabilities.

### PERFORMANCE

**F8.3.1** Signs shall be clearly visible and readily understandable under all conditions of foreseeable use.

**F8.3.2** Signs indicating potential hazards shall be provided in sufficient locations to notify people before they encounter the hazard.

**F8.3.3** Signs to facilitate escape shall:

(a) Be provided in sufficient locations to identify escape routes and guide people to a safe place, and

[(b) Remain visible during failure of the main lighting for the period required by performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5.]

**F8.3.4** Signs shall be provided in sufficient locations to identify accessible routes and facilities provided for people with disabilities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Objective F8.1(c) shall apply only to those buildings to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requirement F8.2 shall not apply to Detached Dwellings, or within household units of Multi-unit Dwellings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The limits on application to clause F8.1(c) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.

Clause F8.3.3(b) was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 6(4) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).
## CLAUSE G1—PERSONAL HYGIENE

### OBJECTIVE

**G1.1** The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from illness caused by infection or contamination,

(b) Safeguard people from loss of amenity arising from the absence of appropriate personal hygiene facilities, and

(c) Ensure people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

**G1.2** Buildings shall be provided with appropriate spaces and facilities for personal hygiene.

### PERFORMANCE

**G1.3.1** Sanitary fixtures shall be provided in sufficient number and be appropriate for the people who are intended to use them.

**G1.3.2** Sanitary fixtures shall be located, constructed and installed to:

(a) Facilitate sanitation,

(b) Avoid risk of food contamination,

(c) Avoid harbouring dirt or germs,

(d) Provide appropriate privacy,

(e) Avoid affecting occupants of adjacent spaces from the presence of unpleasant odours, accumulation of offensive matter, or other source of annoyance,

(f) Allow effective cleaning,

(g) Discharge to a plumbing and drainage system as required by clause G13 “Foul water” when water-borne disposal is used, and

(h) Provide a healthy safe disposal system when non-water-borne disposal is used.

**G1.3.3** Facilities for personal hygiene shall be provided in convenient locations.

**G1.3.4** Personal hygiene facilities provided for people with disabilities shall be accessible.

### Limits on application

Objective G1.1(c) shall apply only to those buildings to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Performance G1.3.4 shall not apply to Housing, Outbuildings, [backcountry huts], Ancillary buildings, and to Industrial buildings where no more than 10 people are employed.

---

The limits on application to clause G1.1(c) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.

**CLAUSE G2—LAUNDERING**

**Provisions**

**OBJECTIVE**

G2.1 The objective of this provision is to ensure:

(a) Adequate amenities for people to do laundering, and

(b) That people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

**FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

G2.2 Buildings shall be provided with adequate space and facilities for laundering.

**PERFORMANCE**

G2.3.1 Facilities shall have capacity for the intended use, and consist of fixtures, or space and services for appliances.

G2.3.2 Space shall be adequate in size to provide for the installation and use of fixtures or appliances.

G2.3.3 Space and facilities shall be provided within each accommodation unit or may be grouped elsewhere in a convenient location.

G2.3.4 Accessible facilities shall be provided for people with disabilities.

**Limits on application**

Objective G2.1(b) shall apply to those buildings to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Requirement G2.2 shall apply only to Housing, old people’s homes, early childhood centres, camping grounds and work camps.

Performance G2.3.4 shall apply only to camping grounds.

---

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

The limits on application to clause G2.1(b) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLAUSE G3—FOOD PREPARATION AND PREVENTION OF CONTAMINATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3.1 The objective of this provision is to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from illness due to contamination,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Enable hygienic food preparation without loss of amenity,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3.2.1 Buildings shall be provided with space and facilities for the hygienic storage, preparation and cooking of food, that are adequate for the intended use of the building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3.2.2 Buildings used for the storage, manufacture or processing of food, including animal products, shall be constructed to safeguard the contents from contamination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[G3.2.3] Buildings used for the medical treatment of humans or animals, or the reception of dead bodies, shall be constructed to avoid the spread of contamination from the building contents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3.3.1 Food preparation facilities shall be hygienic and include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Space for a refrigerator, or a perishable food storage area capable of being cooled and protected from vermin and insects,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Means for food rinsing, utensil washing and waste water disposal,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Means for cooking food, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Space and a surface for food preparation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Objective G3.1(c) shall apply only to those buildings to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Requirement G3.2.1 shall apply to Housing, work camps, old people’s homes and early childhood centres, and where appropriate shall also apply to Commercial and Industrial buildings whose intended uses include the manufacture, preparation, packaging or storage of food.

Performance G3.3.1(a) and (b) shall apply to Housing, work camps, old people’s homes, early childhood centres and Commercial or Industrial buildings whose intended uses include the handling of perishable food.

Performance G3.3.1(c) shall apply to Housing, work camps, old people’s homes and early childhood centres.

Performance G3.3.1(d) shall apply to Housing, work camps, old people’s homes and early childhood centres.

Clause G3 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 9 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the expression “G3.2.3” for the expression “G3.2.2” where it secondly occurred under the heading “FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT”.

The limits on application to clause G3.1(c) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
### CLAUSE G3—FOOD PREPARATION AND PREVENTION OF CONTAMINATION

#### Provisions

G3.3.2 Spaces for food preparation and utensil washing shall have:

- (a) Interior linings and work surfaces shall be *impervious* and easily cleaned,
- (b) All *building elements* constructed with materials which are free from *hazardous substances* which could cause contamination to the *building* contents, and
- (c) Exposed *building elements* located and shaped to avoid the accumulation of dirt.

G3.3.3 An *adequate* energy supply shall be provided, appropriately located for use by cooking and refrigeration appliances.

G3.3.4 Space and facilities shall be provided within each *household unit*, or grouped elsewhere in a convenient location.

G3.3.5 Where facilities are provided for *people with disabilities* they shall be *accessible*.

G3.3.6 Spaces in *buildings* shall be protected from the likelihood of contamination or vermin entering areas used for the storage, processing or preparation of food, and shall have a means of preventing contamination spreading from these areas to other spaces.

#### Limits on application

Performance G3.3.2(b) shall apply to *Housing*, work camps, old people’s homes and early childhood centres, and where appropriate shall also apply to *Commercial and Industrial buildings* whose *intended uses* include the manufacture, preparation, packaging or storage of food.

Performance G3.3.2(c) shall not apply to *Housing*.

Performance G3.3.5 shall apply only to camping grounds and *accessible accommodation units* in *Communal Residential buildings*.

Performance G3.3.6 shall apply to *Commercial or Industrial buildings* whose *intended uses* include the handling of perishable food, the medical treatment of humans or animals, the slaughter of animals or the reception of dead bodies.
CLAUSE G4—VENTILATION

OBJECTIVE
G4.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or loss of amenity due to lack of fresh air.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT
G4.2 Spaces within buildings shall be provided with adequate ventilation consistent with their maximum occupancy [and their intended use].

PERFORMANCE
G4.3.1 Spaces within buildings shall have means of ventilation with outdoor air that will provide an adequate number of air changes to maintain air purity.

G4.3.2 Mechanical air-handling systems shall be constructed and maintained in a manner that prevents harmful bacteria, pathogens and allergens from multiplying within them.

G4.3.3 Buildings shall have a means of collecting or otherwise removing the following products from the spaces in which they are generated:
   (a) Cooking fumes and odours,
   (b) [Moisture] from laundering, utensil washing, bathing and showering,
   (c) Odours from sanitary and waste storage spaces,
   (d) Gaseous by-products and excessive moisture from commercial or industrial processes,
   (e) Poisonous fumes and gases,
   (f) Flammable fumes and gases,
   (g) Airborne particles,
   (h) Bacteria, viruses or other pathogens, or
   (i) Products of combustion.

G4.3.4 Contaminated air shall be disposed of in a way which avoids creating a nuisance or hazard to people and other property.

G4.3.5 The quantities of air supplied for ventilation shall meet the additional demands of any fixed combustion appliances.

Clause G4.2 Schedule was amended, as from 11 September 1997, by regulation 3(1) Building Amendment Regulations 1997 (SR 1997/156) by inserting the words “and their intended use”.

Clause G4.3.3(b) Schedule was amended, as from 11 September 1997, by regulation 3(1) Building Amendment Regulations 1997 (SR 1997/156) by substituting the word “Moisture” for the word “Steam”.

ARCHIVED
## CLAUSE G5—INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

### OBJECTIVE

**G5.1** The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from illness caused by low air temperature,
- (b) Safeguard people from injury or loss of amenity caused by inadequate activity space,
- (c) Safeguard people from injury caused by unsafe installations, and
- (d) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

**G5.2.1** Buildings shall be constructed to provide:

- (a) An adequate, controlled interior temperature,
- (b) Adequate activity space for the intended use, and
- (c) Accessible spaces and facilities.

**G5.2.2** Heating appliances in buildings shall be installed in a way that reduces the likelihood of injury.

### PERFORMANCE

**G5.3.1** Habitable spaces, bathrooms and recreation rooms shall have provision for maintaining the internal temperature at no less than 16°C measured at 750mm above floor level, while the space is adequately ventilated.

**G5.3.2** Heating appliances, and any attached cables, pipes or other fittings shall be securely fixed in place.

**G5.3.3** Habitable spaces shall have sufficient space for activity, furniture, and sanitary and mobility aids.

**G5.3.4** Where reception counters or desks are provided for public space, at least one counter or desk shall be accessible.

### Limits on application

- Objective G5.1(d) shall apply to those buildings to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.
- Requirement G5.2.1(a) shall apply only to habitable spaces, bathrooms and recreation rooms in old people’s homes and early childhood centres.
- Requirement G5.2.1(b) shall apply only to old people’s homes.
- Requirement G5.2.1(c) shall apply only to Communal Residential, Communal Non-residential, and Commercial buildings.
- Performance G5.3.1 shall apply only to old people’s homes and early childhood centres.
- Performance G5.3.2 shall apply only to old people’s homes and early childhood centres.
- Performance G5.3.3 shall apply only to old people’s homes.
- Performance G5.3.4 applies only to Communal Residential, Communal Non-Residential, and Commercial buildings.

---

Clause G5 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 10 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the expression “old people’s homes” for the expression “old people’s homes” in italics in the second column, opposite clause G5.2.1(b).

The limits on application to clause G5.1(d) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975.”
CLAUSE G5—INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT (continued)

Provisions

G5.3.5 Buildings shall be provided with listening systems which enable enhanced hearing by people with hearing aids.

G5.3.6 Enhanced listening systems shall be identified by signs complying with Clause F8 “Signs”.

Limits on application

Performance G5.3.5 applies only to:

(a) Communal Non-Residential assembly spaces occupied by more than 250 people, and
(b) Any theatre, cinema, or public hall, and
(c) Assembly spaces in old people’s homes occupied by more than 20 people.
CLAUSE G6—AIRBORNE AND IMPACT SOUND

**OBJECTIVE**

G6.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or loss of amenity as a result of undue noise being transmitted between abutting occupancies.

**FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

G6.2 Building elements which are common between occupancies, shall be constructed to prevent undue noise transmission from other occupancies or common spaces, to the habitable spaces of household units.

**PERFORMANCE**

G6.3.1 The Sound Transmission Class of walls, floors and ceilings, shall be no less than 55.

G6.3.2 The Impact Insulation Class of floors shall be no less than 55.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness</td>
<td>Requirement G7.2 shall apply only to Housing, old people's homes and early childhood centres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or loss of amenity due to isolation from natural light and the outside</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7.2 Habitable spaces shall provide adequate openings for natural light</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and for a visual awareness of the outside environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7.3.1 Natural light shall provide an illuminance of no less than 30 lux</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at floor level for 75 percent of the standard year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7.3.2 Openings to give awareness of the outside shall be transparent and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provided in suitable locations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**CLAUSE G8—ARTIFICIAL LIGHT**

**OBJECTIVE**

G8.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury due to lack of adequate lighting.

**FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

G8.2 Spaces within buildings used by people, shall be provided with adequate artificial lighting which, when activated in the absence of sufficient natural light, will enable safe movement.

**PERFORMANCE**

G8.3 Illuminance at floor level shall be no less than 20 lux.

---

*Schedule 1 clause G8.2 paragraph (a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 11(1) of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).*

*Schedule 1 clause G8.2 paragraph (b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 11(2) of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).*

*Schedule 1 clause G8.2 paragraph (c): amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 11(3) of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).*

Clause G8.3 was amended, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 6(5) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124) by substituting the limit on application.
CLAUSE G9—ELECTRICITY

OBJECTIVE

G9.1 The objective of this provision is to ensure that:

(a) In buildings supplied with electricity, the electrical installation has safeguards against outbreak of fire and personal injury, and

(b) People with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G9.2 Where provided in a building, electrical installations shall be safe for their intended use.

PERFORMANCE

G9.3.1 The electrical installation shall incorporate systems to:

(a) Protect people from contact with parts of the installation which are live during normal operation, and to prevent parts of the installation or other building elements becoming live during fault conditions,

(b) Permit the safe isolation of the installation and of electrical fittings and appliances,

(c) Safeguard people from excessive temperatures resulting from either normal operation of electrical equipment, or from currents which could exceed the installation rating,

(d) Safeguard people from injury which may result from electromechanical stress in electrical components caused by currents in excess of the installation rating,

(e) Protect building elements from risk of ignition, impairment of their physical or mechanical properties, or function, due to temperature increases resulting from heat transfer or electric arc,

(f) Operate safely in its intended environment, and

(g) Safeguard against ignition of the surrounding atmosphere where it is potentially flammable or explosive.

Limits on application

Objective G9.1(b) shall apply only to those buildings to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

The limits on application to clause G9.1(b) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.

The limits on application to clause G9.1(b) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.
## Clause G9—Electricity (continued)

### Provisions

**G9.3.2** An electrical installation supplying an essential service shall:
(a) Maintain the supply for a time appropriate to that service, and
(b) Be capable of being isolated from the supply system, independently of the remainder of the installation.

**G9.3.3** An electrical installation connected to an electrical supply system, shall contain safeguards which protect the safety features of the external supply.

**G9.3.4** In buildings intended for use by people with disabilities, light switches and plug socket outlets shall be accessible and usable.

### Limits on application

Performance G9.3.4 shall not apply to Housing, Outbuildings, Ancillary buildings, and to Industrial buildings where no more than 10 people are employed.
## Clause G10—Piped Services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by extreme temperatures or hazardous substances associated with building services.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Functional Requirement</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.2 In buildings provided with potentially hazardous services containing hot, cold, flammable, corrosive or toxic fluids, the installations shall be constructed to provide adequate safety for people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Performance</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.1 Piping systems shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Significant leakage or damage during normal or reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Detrimental contamination of the contents by other substances,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Adverse interaction between services, or between piping and electrical systems, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) People having contact with pipes which could cause them harm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.2 Provision shall be made for the ready removal of moisture or condensate in gas pipes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.3 Pipes shall be protected against corrosion in the environment of their use.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.4 Piping systems shall be identified with markings if the contents are not readily apparent from the location or associated equipment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.5 Enclosed spaces shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of accumulating vented or leaking gas.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.6 Piped systems shall have isolation devices which permit the installation or individual items of apparatus to be isolated from the supply system, for maintenance, testing, fault detection and repair.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CLAUSE G11—GAS AS AN ENERGY SOURCE

#### OBJECTIVE

**G11.1** The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from injury arising from the use of gas as an energy source,
- (b) Safeguard people and *other property* from the risk of *fire* or explosion, and
- (c) Safeguard people from loss of *amenity* due to the gas supply being inadequate for the *intended use*.

#### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

**G11.2** In *buildings* where gas is used as an energy source, the supply system shall be *safe* and *adequate* for its *intended use*.

#### PERFORMANCE

**G11.3.1** Supply systems shall be constructed to maintain a safe pressure range appropriate to the appliances and the type of gas used.

**G11.3.2** The gas supply to all appliances in a single ventilated space, shall be fitted with an automatic cut-off activated by failure of any continuous forced ventilation system used for combustion, ventilation or safe operation of a fixed gas appliance.

**G11.3.3** A flued fixed gas appliance shall have no adverse interaction with any other flued appliance.

**G11.3.4** Supply systems shall have isolation devices which permit the whole installation, or individual items of apparatus, to be isolated from the supply for maintenance, testing, fault detection or repair.

**G11.3.5** Where gas is supplied from an external source, the supply system within *buildings* shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of:

- (a) Contamination of the external supply from other gas sources within the *building*,
- (b) Adverse effects on the pressure of the external supply, and
- (c) The external supply pipe acting as an earthing conductor.

**G11.3.6** The location and installation of meters and service risers shall meet the requirements of the *network utility operator*.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from injury arising from the use of gas as an energy source,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Safeguard people and <em>other property</em> from the risk of <em>fire</em> or explosion, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Safeguard people from loss of <em>amenity</em> due to the gas supply being inadequate for the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>intended use</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.2</strong> In <em>buildings</em> where gas is used as an energy source, the supply system shall be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>safe</em> and <em>adequate</em> for its <em>intended use</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.3.1</strong> Supply systems shall be constructed to maintain a safe pressure range appropriate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the appliances and the type of gas used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.3.2</strong> The gas supply to all appliances in a single ventilated space, shall be fitted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with an automatic cut-off activated by failure of any continuous forced ventilation system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used for combustion, ventilation or safe operation of a fixed gas appliance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.3.3</strong> A flued fixed gas appliance shall have no adverse interaction with any other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flued appliance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.3.4</strong> Supply systems shall have isolation devices which permit the whole installation,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or individual items of apparatus, to be isolated from the supply for maintenance, testing,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fault detection or repair.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.3.5</strong> Where gas is supplied from an external source, the supply system within *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>buildings</em> shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Contamination of the external supply from other gas sources within the <em>building</em>,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Adverse effects on the pressure of the external supply, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) The external supply pipe acting as an earthing conductor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.3.6</strong> The location and installation of meters and service risers shall meet the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requirements of the <em>network utility operator</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### [CLAUSE G12—WATER SUPPLIES](#)

#### OBJECTIVE

**G12.1** The objective of this provision is to—

(a) safeguard people from illness or injury caused by contaminated water:

(b) safeguard people from injury caused by hot water system explosion, or from contact with excessively hot water:

(c) safeguard people from loss of amenity arising from—

(i) a lack of hot water for personal hygiene; or

(ii) water for human consumption that is offensive in appearance, odour, or taste:

(d) ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and functions within buildings.

#### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

**G12.2** Buildings provided with water outlets, sanitary fixtures, or sanitary appliances must have safe and adequate water supplies.

#### PERFORMANCE

**G12.3.1** Water intended for human consumption, food preparation, utensil washing, or oral hygiene must be potable

**G12.3.2** A potable water supply system must be—

(a) protected from contamination; and

(b) installed in a manner that avoids the likelihood of contamination within the system and the water main; and

(c) installed using components that will not contaminate the water.

**G12.3.3** A non-potable water supply system used for personal hygiene must be installed in a manner that avoids the likelihood of illness or injury being caused by the system.

**G12.3.4** Water pipes and outlets provided with non-potable water must be clearly identified.

---

 Clause G12 was substituted, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(10) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374).


 The limits on application to clause G12.1(d) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
### CLAUSE G12—WATER SUPPLIES (continued)

**Provisions**

**G12.3.5** Sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances must be provided with hot water when intended to be used for—

- (a) utensil washing; and
- (b) personal washing, showering, or bathing

**G12.3.6** If hot water is provided to sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances used for personal hygiene, it must be delivered at a temperature that avoids the likelihood of scalding.

**G12.3.7** Water supply systems must be installed in a manner that—

- (a) pipes water to sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances at flow rates that are adequate for the correct functioning of those fixtures and appliances under normal conditions; and
- (b) avoids the likelihood of leakage; and
- (c) allows reasonable access to components likely to need maintenance; and
- (d) allows the system and any backflow prevention devices to be isolated for testing and maintenance.

**G12.3.8** Vessels used for producing or storing hot water must be provided with safety features that—

- (a) relieve excessive pressure during both normal and abnormal conditions; and
- (b) limit temperatures to avoid the likelihood of flash steam production in the event of rupture.

**G12.3.9** A hot water system must be capable of being controlled to prevent the growth of legionella bacteria.

**G12.3.10** Water supply taps must be accessible and usable for people with disabilities.

**Limits on application**

Performance G12.3.5(b) applies to only housing, retirement homes, and early childhood centres.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
CLAUSE G13—FOUL WATER

OBJECTIVE
G13.1 The objective of this provision is to:
(a) Safeguard people from illness due to infection or contamination resulting from personal hygiene activities, and
(b) Safeguard people from loss of amenity due to the presence of unpleasant odours or the accumulation of offensive matter resulting from foul water disposal.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

[G13.2 Buildings in which sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances using water-borne waste disposal are installed must be provided with—]

[(a) an adequate plumbing and drainage system to carry foul water to appropriate outfalls; and]
[(b) if no sewer is available, an adequate system for the storage, treatment, and disposal of foul water.]

PERFORMANCE
G13.3.1 The plumbing system shall be constructed to:
(a) Convey foul water from buildings to a drainage system,
(b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage,
(c) Avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases entering buildings, and
(d) provide reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages.
G13.3.2 The drainage system shall:
(a) Convey foul water to an appropriate outfall,
(b) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of blockage,
(c) Be supported, jointed and protected in a way that will avoid the likelihood of penetration of roots or the entry of ground water,
(d) Be provided with reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages,
**CLAUSE G13—FOUL WATER** (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(e) Be ventilated to avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases accumulating in the drainage system and sewer; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G13.3.3** Where a sewer connection is available, the drainage system shall be connected to the sewer, and the connection shall be made in a manner that avoids damage to the sewer and is to the approval of the network utility operator.

**[G13.3.4** If no sewer is available, facilities for the storage, treatment, and disposal of foul water must be constructed—]

[(a) with adequate capacity for the volume of foul water and the frequency of disposal; and] |
| [b) with adequate vehicle access for collection if required; and] |
| (c) to avoid the likelihood of contamination of any potable water supplies in compliance with Clause G12 “Water supplies”; and] |
| (d) to avoid the likelihood of contamination of soils, ground water, and waterways except as permitted under the Resource Management Act 1991; and] |
| (e) from materials that are impervious both to the foul water for which disposal is required, and to water; and] |
| (f) to avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage; and] |
| (g) to avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases accumulating within or entering into buildings; and] |
| (h) to avoid the likelihood of unauthorised access by people; and] |
| (i) to permit easy cleaning and maintenance; and] |
| (j) to avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movement; and] |
| (k) if those facilities are buried underground, to resist hydrostatic uplift pressures.]

Clause G13.3.4 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 7(2) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).
### CLAUSE G14—INDUSTRIAL LIQUID WASTE

#### OBJECTIVE

**G14.1** The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by infection or contamination resulting from industrial liquid waste.

#### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

**G14.2** Buildings, in which industrial liquid waste is generated shall be provided with adequate spaces and facilities for the safe and hygienic collection, holding, treatment and disposal of the waste.

#### PERFORMANCE

**G14.3.1** Industrial liquid waste shall be conveyed to storage containers and within disposal systems in a way which will:

- (a) Transfer wastes from buildings safely and hygienically,
- (b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage,
- (c) Avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases entering buildings, and
- (d) Provide reasonable access for clearing of blockages.

**G14.3.2** Facilities for the storage, treatment, and disposal of industrial liquid waste must be constructed—

- (a) with adequate capacity for the volume of waste and the frequency of disposal; and
- (b) with adequate vehicle access for collection if required; and
- (c) to avoid the likelihood of contamination of any potable water supplies in compliance with Clause G12 "Water supplies"; and
- (d) to avoid the likelihood of contamination of soils, ground water, and waterways except as permitted under the Resource Management Act 1991; and
- (e) from materials that are impervious both to the waste for which disposal is required, and to water; and
- (f) to avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage; and

---

Clause G14.3.2. (d) was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 12 Building Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by omitting the words "by a resource consent given".

Clause G14.3.2 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 8 Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).
**CLAUSE G14—INDUSTRIAL LIQUID WASTE** (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[(g) to avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases accumulating within or entering into buildings; and]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[(h) to avoid the likelihood of unauthorised access by people; and]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[(i) to permit easy cleaning and maintenance; and]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[(j) to avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movement; and]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[(k) if those facilities are buried underground, to resist hydrostatic uplift pressures.]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CLAUSE G15—SOLID WASTE

OBJECTIVE
G15.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by infection or contamination from solid waste.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT
G15.2 Buildings shall be provided with space and facilities for the collection, and safe hygienic holding prior to disposal, of solid waste arising from the intended use of the buildings.

PERFORMANCE
G15.3.1 Where provision is made within buildings for the collection and temporary holding of solid waste, the spaces provided shall be:
(a) Of sufficient size for the volume of waste and frequency of disposal,
(b) Provided with reasonable access for the depositing and collection of the waste,
(c) Capable of maintaining sanitary conditions having regard to the types of waste and storage containers, and
(d) Capable of maintaining the appropriate temperature for the type of waste stored.
G15.3.2 Where a rubbish chute is provided, it shall be located and constructed to:
(a) Convey the solid waste to an appropriate storage container,
(b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage or leakage,
(c) Permit easy cleaning and maintenance,
(d) Avoid the likelihood of foul air or gases accumulating or entering the building,
(e) Avoid the likelihood of the spread of fire beyond the refuse chute,
(f) Have openings that allow waste to be [safely] deposited in the chute, and
(g) Restrict access by children, animals and vermin.
G15.3.3 Where it is acceptable to the network utility operator, solid waste which has been suitably treated for disposal to a sewer may be discharged via a foul water drain complying with Clause G13 “Foul water”.

Limits on application
Requirement G15.2 shall not apply to Detached Dwellings, household units of Multi-unit Dwellings, Outbuildings or Ancillary buildings if there is independent access or private open space at ground level.

Clause G15.3.2(f) was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 13 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the word “safely” for the word “safety”: 
## H Energy Efficiency

**[CLAUSE H1—ENERGY EFFICIENCY PROVISIONS]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td>Objective H 1.1 applies only when the energy is sourced from a network utility operator or a depletable energy resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td>Requirement H1.2(a) does not apply to assembly service buildings, industrial buildings, outbuildings, or ancillary buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td>Requirement H1.2(c) applies only to commercial buildings and communal non-residential buildings whose floor area is greater than 300 m².</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Provision H1.1
The objective of this provision is to facilitate efficient use of energy.

### Provision H1.2
Buildings must be constructed to achieve an adequate degree of energy efficiency when that energy is used for—

- (a) modifying temperature, modifying humidity, providing ventilation, or doing all or any of those things; or
- (b) providing hot water to [and from]] sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances, or both; or
- (c) providing artificial lighting

### Provision H1.3.1
The building envelope enclosing spaces where the temperature or humidity (or both) are modified must be constructed to—

- (a) provide adequate thermal resistance; and
- (b) limit uncontrollable airflow.

### Provision H1.3.2
...[[H1.3.2A ...]]
[[H1.3.2B ...]]
[[H1.3.2C ...]]
[[H1.3.2D ...]]
[[H1.3.2E Buildings must be constructed to ensure that their building performance index does not exceed 1.55.]]

### Provision H1.3.3
Account must be taken of physical conditions likely to affect energy performance of buildings, including—

- (a) the thermal mass of building elements; and
- (b) the building orientation and shape; and
- (c) the airtightness of the building envelope; and

---

Clause H1 was substituted, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 5 Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119).
Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2: revoked, on 31 October 2007, by regulation 5 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).
Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2A: revoked, on 30 June 2008, by regulation 6 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(d) the heat gains from services, processes and occupants; and</td>
<td>[[Performance H1.3.4(b) does not apply to individual storage vessels that are greater than 700 litres in capacity.]]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) the local climate; and</td>
<td>[[Performance H1.3.4(c) applies only to housing.]]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) heat gains from solar radiation.</td>
<td>Performance H1.3.5 does not apply to lighting provided solely to meet the requirements of clause F6.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H1.3.4** Systems for the heating, storage, or distribution of hot water to and from sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances must, having regard to the energy source used,—

- (a) limit the energy lost in the heating process; and
- (b) be constructed to limit heat losses from storage vessels and from distribution systems; and
- (c) be constructed to facilitate the efficient use of hot water.

**H1.3.5** Artificial lighting fixtures must—

- (a) be located and sized to limit energy use, consistent with the intended use of space; and
- (b) be fitted with a means to enable light intensities to be reduced, consistent with reduced activity in the space.

**H1.3.6** HVAC systems must be located, constructed, and installed to—

- (a) limit energy use, consistent with the intended use of space; and
- (b) enable them to be maintained to ensure their use of energy remains limited, consistent with the intended use of space.

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2B: revoked, on 30 June 2008, by regulation 6 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).
Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2C: revoked, on 30 September 2008, by regulation 7(1) of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).
Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2C: inserted, on 30 June 2008, by regulation 6 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).
Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2D: revoked, on 30 September 2008, by regulation 7(1) of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).
Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2D: inserted, on 30 June 2008, by regulation 6 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).
Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2E: inserted, on 30 September 2008, by regulation 7(1) of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).
Publications Referenced in Handbook and Compliance Documents

For the purposes of New Zealand Building Code compliance, acceptable reference documents include only the quoted edition and specific amendments as listed below.

Dates in brackets indicate that the Standard was reviewed and reissued without change that year.

Compliance Documents in which the particular references are quoted are identified by the relevant Building Code Clause and the number of the Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example: B1/VM1/AS3 indicates that the reference occurs in Verification Method 1, and Acceptable Solution 3 of the Compliance Document for Clause B1 Structure.

Where references are quoted in the Compliance Schedule Handbook, these are identified by the letters HB and the relevant section. For example: HB/SS 3 indicates that the reference occurs in the content guide for SS 3 in the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

Places where the reference documents are quoted, are more specifically identified by paragraph or table, in the reference list contained in each Compliance Document.

### Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standards New Zealand</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standards Australia</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Standards Institution</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Publications (other than Standards)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia/New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Publications (other than Standards)</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Publications</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US Publications</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Standards New Zealand

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NZS/BS 21: 1985</th>
<th>Specification for pipe threads for tubes and fittings where pressure-tight joints are made on the threads (metric dimensions)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Where quoted

G10/AS1, G14/VM1
### NZS/BS 476:- Fire tests on building materials and structures

- **Part 20: 1987** Method for determination of the fire resistance of elements of construction (general principles)  
  Amend: 6487
- **Part 21: 1987** Methods for determination of the fire resistance of loadbearing elements of construction
- **Part 22: 1987** Methods for determination of the fire resistance of non-loadbearing elements of construction

### NZS/BS 970:- Specification for wrought steels for mechanical and allied engineering purposes

- **Part 1: 1991** General inspection and testing procedures and specific requirements for carbon, carbon manganese, alloy and stainless steels  
  Amend: 1

### NZS 1170: Structural Design Actions

- **Part 5: 2004** Earthquake design actions – New Zealand standard

### AS/NZS 1170: Structural Design Actions

- **Part 0: 2002** General principles  
  Amends: 1, 2 and 4
- **Part 1: 2002** Permanent, imposed and other actions  
  Amend: 1
- **Part 2: 2002** Wind Actions  
  Amend: 1
- **Part 3: 2003** Snow and ice actions  
  Amend: 1

### AS/NZS 1221: 1997 Fire hose reels

- Amend: 1

### AS/NZS 1254: 2002 Unplasticised PVC pipes and fittings for storm and surface water applications

### AS/NZS 1260: 2002 PVC pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications

### AS/NZS 1260: 2009 PVC-U Pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent application

### NZS/BS 1387: 1985 Specification for screwed and socketed steel tubes (1990) and tubulars and for plain end steel tubes suitable for welding or screwing to BS 21 pipe threads

- Amend: 1

### AS 1397: 2001 Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dipped zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated

### AS/NZS 1477: 2006 PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications

- Amend: 1

### AS/NZS 1530:- Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures

- **Part 3: 1999** Simultaneous determination of ignitability, flame propagation, heat release and smoke release

### Where quoted

| Amend 11 Sep 2010 |
|---|---|
| C/AS1 | C/AS1 |
| C/AS1 | |
| C/AS1 | |
| E1/AS1 | B1/VM1, G12/AS2 |
| B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, C/AS1, G12/AS2 | G10/AS1 |
| B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2 | |
| C/AS1 | E1/AS1 |
| SH/AS1 | E1/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2, G14/VM1 |
| G10/AS1, G12/AS1, G14/VM1 | |
| E1/AS1 | G12/AS1, G14/VM1 |

---

**Archived**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>Amend</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1546: 2008 On-site domestic wastewater treatment units</td>
<td></td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: Septic tanks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1547: 2000 On-site domestic wastewater management</td>
<td></td>
<td>G13/VM4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1604: Specification for preservative treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 2002 Plywood</td>
<td></td>
<td>G13/AS2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1646: 2007 Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes</td>
<td></td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS/AS 1657: 1992 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders – Design, construction and installation (known as the SAA Code for fixed platforms, walkways, stairways, and ladders)</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td>B1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1664:- Aluminium structures</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1997 Limit state design</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1668:- The use of ventilation and air conditioning in buildings</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1998 Fire and smoke control in multi-compartment buildings</td>
<td></td>
<td>C/AS1, F7/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1680: Interior and workplace lighting</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2006 General principles and recommendations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1730: 1996 Washbasins</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1734: 1997 Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Flat sheet, coiled sheet and plate</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1748: 1997 Timber – Stress graded – Product requirements for mechanically stress-graded timber</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1859 Reconstituted wood-based panels</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2002 Particleboard</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1905:- Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1997 Fire-resistant doorsets</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2023: 1995 Baths for ablutionary purposes</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2032: 2006 Installation of PVC pipe systems</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td>Amend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand Building Code Handbook</td>
<td>Where quoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS/AS 2033: 2008 Installation of polyethylene pipe systems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2243:1 2005 Safety in laboratories – Planning and operational aspects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2243:8 2006 Safety in laboratories – Fume cupboards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2269: 2004 Plywood – Structural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2269: 2008 Plywood – Structural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2280: 2004 Ductile iron pressure pipes and fittings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2293: 2004 Emergency evacuation lighting for buildings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1995 Inspection and maintenance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 2295: 2006 Pliable, permeable building underlays</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1998 Structural Design</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2002 Installation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2588: 1998 Gypsum plasterboard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2642: 2004 Polybutylene pipe systems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2007 Polybutylene (PB) pipe extrusion compounds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2008 Polybutylene (PB) pipe for hot and cold water applications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 2008 Mechanical jointing fittings for use with polybutylene (PB) pipes for hot and cold water applications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2000 Wall ties</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2000 Connectors and accessories</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 2002 Lintels and shelf angles (durability requirements)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2712: 2002 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and construction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(until 1 July 2009) construction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2712: 2007 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and construction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>Where quoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2728: 2007 Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications</td>
<td>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2845: Water supply</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2904: 1995 Damp-proof courses and flashings</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2918: 2001 Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – installation</td>
<td>B1/AS3 C/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3000: 2007 Electrical installations</td>
<td>G9/VM1/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3101: Concrete structures standard Part 1: 2006 The design of concrete structures</td>
<td>B2/AS1, B1/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3106: 2009 Design of concrete structures for the storage of liquids</td>
<td>B1/VM1, G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3114: 1987 Specification for concrete surface finishes</td>
<td>D1/AS1, G15/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3116: 2002 Concrete segmental and flagstone paving</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3350.2.35: 1999 Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Particular requirements – Instantaneous water heaters</td>
<td>G12/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3404: Steel structures standard Part 1: 1997 Steel structures standard</td>
<td>B1/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AS/NZS 3500: National plumbing and drainage code
  Part 1: 2003 Water services
    Amend: 1
  Part 2: 2003 Sanitary plumbing and drainage
    Amend: 1
  Part 4: 2003 Heated water services
    Amend: 1
  Part 5: 2003 Domestic installation

NZS 3501: 1976 Specification for copper tubes for water, gas, and sanitation
  Amend: 1, 2 and 3

NZS 3502: 1976 Specification for copper and copper alloy tubes for general engineering purposes

AS/NZS 3518: 2004 Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) compounds pipes and fittings for pressure applications
  Amend: 1

  with specified room temperature properties for pressure purposes
  Amend: 1, 2

NZS 3602:
  NZS 3603: 1993 Timber structures standard
    Amend: 1, 2 (Applies to building work consented prior to 1 April 2007)
    Amend: 1, 2, 4 (Applies to building work consented on or after 1 April 2007)
  NZS 3604: 1990 Timber framed buildings
  NZS 3604: 1999 Timber framed buildings
    Amend: 1, 2
  NZS 3604: 2011 Timber framed buildings

NZS 3605: 2001 Timber piles and poles for use in building

NZS 3617: 1979 Specification for profiles of weatherboards, fascia boards, and flooring

NZS 3622: 2004 Verification of timber properties
  Amend: 1

Where quoted:

G12/VM1/AS1
G13/AS1/VM2/AS2/
  AS3
G12/VM1/AS1/AS2
SH/AS1
G10/AS1,
G13/AS1/AS2
G12/AS1
G10/AS1
G13/AS2, G14/VM1
G10/AS1
B2/AS1, E2/AS1 SH/AS1
B1/VM1/VM4
SH/AS1
G12/AS2
B2/AS1, E1/AS1,
G12/AS2, G13/AS2,
SH/AS1
B1/AS1/AS3,
E2/VM1/AS1/AS2
G12/AS2
B1/VM4, SH/AS1
E2/AS1, SH/AS1
B1/VM1, SH/AS1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amendment</th>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3631: 1988</td>
<td>New Zealand timber grading rules</td>
<td>SH/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3640: 2003</td>
<td>Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber</td>
<td>B1/VM4, SH/AS1, B2/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3640: 2003</td>
<td>Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber</td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2</td>
<td>D1/VM1/AS1, D1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3640: 2003</td>
<td>Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber</td>
<td>Amend: 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3661:-</td>
<td>Slip resistance of pedestrian surfaces</td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
<td>G4/AS1, G4/AS1, HB/SS 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1993</td>
<td>Requirements</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1994</td>
<td>Guide to the reduction of slip hazards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3666:-</td>
<td>Air-handling and water systems of buildings</td>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>G4/AS1, G4/AS1, HB/SS 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2002</td>
<td>Design, installation and commissioning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2002</td>
<td>Operation and maintenance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 2000</td>
<td>Performance-based maintenance of cooling water systems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS/AS 3725: 2007</td>
<td>Design for installation of buried concrete pipes</td>
<td>B1/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3837: 1998</td>
<td>Method of test for heat and smoke release rates for materials and products using an oxygen consumption calorimeter</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3896: 1998</td>
<td>Waters – Examination for legionellae including Legionella pneumophila</td>
<td>HB/SS 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4020: 2005</td>
<td>Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water</td>
<td>E2/AS1, G12/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4058: 2007</td>
<td>Precast concrete pipes (pressure and non-pressure)</td>
<td>B1/VM1, E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4121: 2001</td>
<td>Design for access and mobility – Buildings and associated facilities</td>
<td>D1/AS1, G1/AS1, G5/AS1, SH/AS1, G12/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4129: 2008</td>
<td>Fillings for polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4130: 2003</td>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications</td>
<td>G12/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4130: 2009</td>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications</td>
<td>G12/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4200: 1994</td>
<td>Pliable building membranes and underlays</td>
<td>SH/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1994</td>
<td>Materials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| NZS 4203: 1992 | Code of practice for general structural design and design loadings for buildings  
*Corrigendum: 1* |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4206: 1992</td>
<td>Concrete interlocking roofing tiles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| NZS 4210: 2001 | Code of practice for masonry construction: materials and workmanship  
*Amend: 1* |
| NZS 4211: 1985 | Specification for performance of windows  
*Amend: 1, 2, 3* |
| NZS 4211: 2008 | Specification for performance of windows |
| NZS 4214: 2006 | Methods of determining the total thermal resistance of parts of buildings |
| NZS 4217:- | Pressed metal tile roofs  
| NZS 4218: 2004 | Energy efficiency – housing and small building envelope |
| NZS 4219: 1983 | Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings  
*Amend: 1, 2* |
| NZS 4219: 2009 | Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings |
| NZS 4223:- | Code of practice for glazing in buildings  
Part 1: 2008 | Glass selection and glazing |
| Part 2: 1985 | The selection and installation of manufactured sealed insulating glass units  
*Amend: 1, 2* |
| Part 3: 1999 | Human impact safety requirements |
| Part 4: 2008 | Wind, dead, snow, and live actions |
| NZS 4229: 1999 | Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design  
*Amend: 1* |

Where quoted

- **G12/AS2**
- **E2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS3, SH/AS1**
- **SH/AS1**
- **B1/VM1, E2/VM1/AS1**
- **E3/AS1, G5/AS1, H1/VM1/AS1**
- **E2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **E2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **H1/VM1/AS1**
- **G10/AS1, G14/VM1**
- **B1/VM1**
- **B1/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS1, F2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS1/AS3, E1/AS1, G13/AS2**
NZS 4230: 2004  Design of reinforced concrete masonry structures  
Amend: 1

NZS 4231: 1985  Specification for self-luminous exit signs 
Amend: A

NZS 4232:-  Performance criteria for fire resisting enclosures 
Part 2: 1988  Fire resisting glazing systems

NZS HB 4236: 2002  Masonary veneer wall cladding

NZS 4239: 1993  Automatic sliding door assemblies  
Amend: A

NZS 4243:  Energy efficiency – large buildings 
Part 1: 2007  Building thermal envelope 
Part 2: 2007  Lighting

NZS 4246: 2006  Energy efficiency – Installing insulation in residential buildings

NZS 4251:-  Solid plastering 
Part 1: 2007  Cement plaster for walls, ceilings and soffits

AS/NZS 4256: Plastic roof and wall cladding materials 
Part 2: 1994  Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (uPVC) building sheets

AS/NZS 4284: 2008  Testing of building facades

NZS 4297: 1998  Engineering design for earth buildings

NZS 4298: 1998  Materials and workmanship for earth buildings  
Amend: 1

NZS 4299: 1998  Earth buildings not requiring specific design  
Amend: 1

NZS 4303: 1990  Ventilation for acceptable indoor air quality

NZS 4304: 2002  Health care waste management

NZS 4305: 1996  Energy efficiency – domestic type hot water systems

AS/NZS 4331: 1995  Metallic flanges 
Part 1:  Steel flanges 
Part 2:  Cast iron flanges 
Part 3:  Copper alloy and composite flanges

NZS 4332: 1997  Non-domestic passenger and goods lifts

AS/NZS 4401: 2006  High density polyethylene (PE-HD) pipes and fittings for soil and waste discharge (low and high temperature) systems inside buildings

Where quoted

B1/VM1
F8/AS1
HB/SS 15
C/AS1
E2/AS1
HB/SS 3
H1/VM1/AS1
SH/AS1
B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS1
E2/AS1, SH/AS1
E2/VM1
B1/VM1, B2/AS1
E2/AS2
B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS2
G4/AS1
G15/AS1
H1/AS1
G10/AS1, G14/VM1
G10/AS1, G14/VM1
G14/VM1
D2/AS1, F6/AS1, HB/SS 8
G13/AS1, G14/VM1
| NZS 4402: Part 2 | Methods of testing soils for civil engineering purposes
| Test 2.2: 1986 | Determination of the liquid limit
| Test 2.6: 1986 | Determination of the linear shrinkage
| Part 4: | Soil compaction tests
| Test 4.2.3: 1988 | Related densities
| NZS 4431: 1989 | Code of practice for earth fill for residential development
| NZS 4442: 1988 | Welded steel pipes and fittings for water, sewage and medium pressure gas
| AS/NZS 4455: 1997 | Masonry units and segmental pavers
| AS/NZS 4456: 2003 | Masonry unit and segmental pavers – Methods of test
| NZS 4503: 2005 | Hand operated fire fighting equipment
| NZS 4510: 2008 | Fire hydrant systems for buildings
| NZS 4512: 2010 | Fire detection and alarm systems in buildings
| NZS 4515: 2009 | Fire sprinkler systems for life safety in sleeping occupancies (up to 2000 m²)
| NZS 4520: 2010 | Fire resistant doorsets
| AS/NZS 4534: 2006 | Zinc and zinc/aluminium-alloy coatings on steel wire
| NZS 4541: 2007 | Automatic fire sprinkler systems
| AS/NZS 4586: 2004 | Slip resistance classification of new pedestrian surface materials
| AS/NZS 4600: 2005 | Cold-formed steel structures
| NZS 4602: 1988 | Low pressure copper thermal storage electric water heaters
| NZS 4603: 1985 | Installation of low pressure thermal storage electric water heaters with copper cylinders (open vented systems)

Where quoted

| B1/VM1
| B1/Defs, SH/AS1
| B1/Defs
| B1/VM4
| B1/VM1, E2/AS2
| SH/AS1
| E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1
| SH/AS1
| SH/AS1
| C/AS1
| C/AS1, HB/SS 6
| C/AS1, HB/SS 2, HB/SS 15, F7/AS1
| C/AS1, HB/SS 1, F7/AS1
| C/AS1
| E2/AS1
| C/AS1, F7/AS1
| HB/SS 1
| SH/AS1
| B1/VM1
| G12/AS1
| G12/AS1, SH/AS1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4606:-</td>
<td>Storage water heaters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1989</td>
<td>General requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1989</td>
<td>Specific requirements for water heaters with single shells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 1992</td>
<td>Specific requirements for water heaters with composite shells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4607: 1989</td>
<td>Installation of thermal storage electric water heaters: valve vented systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4608: 1992</td>
<td>Control valves for hot water systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4613: 1986</td>
<td>Domestic solar water heaters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4614: 1986</td>
<td>Installation of domestic solar water heating systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4617: 1989</td>
<td>Tempering (3-port mixing) valves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4671: 2001 Steel reinforcing materials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4680: 2006</td>
<td>Hot-dip galvanised (zinc) coating on fabricated ferrous articles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4692: Electric water heaters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2005</td>
<td>Minimum Energy Performance Standards (MEPS) requirements and energy labelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4740: 2000 Natural ventilators – classification and performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4765: 2007 Modified polyvinyl chloride (PVC-M) pipes for pressure applications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4858: 2004 Wet area membranes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4859:- Materials for the thermal insulation of buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2002 General criteria and technical provisions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4936: 2002 Air admittance valves for use in sanitary plumbing and drainage systems.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 5000.1 2005 Electric cables – Polymeric insulated – For working voltages up to and including 0.6/1 (1.2) kV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 5000.2 2006 Electric cables – Polymeric insulated Part 2: For working voltages up to and including 450/750 v.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 5065: 2005 Polyethylene and polypropylene pipe and fittings for drainage and sewerage applications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where quoted:
- G12/AS1, SH/AS1
- SH/AS1
- G12/AS1, SH/AS1
- G12/AS1
- G12/AS1
- G12/AS1
- G12/AS1
- SH/AS1
- B1/AS1/AS3
- B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1
- G12/AS2
- E2/AS1
- H1/AS1
- G13/AS1, SH/AS1
- G12/AS1
- E1/AS1, G13/AS2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NZS/BS 5252: 1976</td>
<td>Framework for colour co-ordination for building purposes</td>
<td>F8/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 5261: 2003</td>
<td>Gas installation</td>
<td>C/AS1, G4/AS1, G10/VM1/AS1, G11/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 5262: 2003</td>
<td>Gas appliance safety</td>
<td>SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 5807-</td>
<td>Code of practice for industrial identification by colour, wording or other coding</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1980</td>
<td>Identification of contents of piping, conduit and ducts</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 6214: 1988</td>
<td>Thermostats and thermal cutouts for domestic thermal storage electric water heaters (alternating current only)</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 6703: 1984</td>
<td>Code of practice for interior lighting design</td>
<td>G7/AS1/VM1, G8/VM1, F8/AS1, HB/SS 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 6742: 1971</td>
<td>Code of practice for emergency lighting in buildings</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 7601: 1978</td>
<td>Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 3) for cold water services</td>
<td>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 7602: 1977</td>
<td>Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 5) for cold water services</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 7610: 1991</td>
<td>Blue polyethylene pipes up to nominal size 63 for below ground use for potable water</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 7646: 1978</td>
<td>Specification for polyethylene pipes and fittings for gas reticulation</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNZ HB 8630: 2009</td>
<td>Tracks and outdoor visitor structures</td>
<td>B1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 60335 Part 2.30: 2009</td>
<td>Household and similar electrical Safety appliance – Particular requirements for room heaters</td>
<td>SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Standards Australia

- **AS D26: 1972** Tube fittings with Dryseal American standard taper pipe and unified threads for automotive and industrial use

- **AS 1111:** ISO metric hexagon bolts and screws – Product grades A and B
  - Part 1: 2000 Bolts
  - Part 2: 2000 Screws

- **AS 1167:** Welding and brazing – Filler metals
  - Part 1: 2005 Filler metal for brazing and braze welding

- **AS 1214:** 1983 Hot-dip galvanised coatings on threaded fasteners (ISO metric coarse thread series)

- **AS 1229:** 2002 Laundry troughs

- **AS 1273:** 1991 Unplasticized PVC (uPVC) downpipe and fittings for rainwater

- **AS 1308:** 1987 Electric water heaters – Thermostats and thermal cut-outs
  - Amend: 1

- **AS 1357:** Water valves for use with unvented water heaters
  - Part 1: 2009 Protection valves
  - Part 2: 2005 Control valves
  - Amend: 1, 2

- **AS 1366:** Rigid cellular plastics sheets for thermal insulation
  - Part 1: 1992 Rigid cellular polyurethane (RC/PUR)
  - Amend: 1
  - Part 2: 1992 Rigid cellular polyisocyanurate (RC/PIR)
    - Amend: 1

- **AS 1397:** 2001 Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dip zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated

- **AS 1432:** 2004 Copper tubes for plumbing, gasfitting and drainage applications

### Where quoted

- **G10/AS1**
- **SH/AS1**
- **G2/AS1**
- **E1/AS1**
- **G12/AS1**
- **C/AS1**
- **C/AS1, E2/AS1**
- **C/AS1, E2/AS1**
- **B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **G10/AS1**
AS 1530:- Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures
  Part 1: 1994 Combustibility test for materials
  Part 2: 1993 Test for flammability of materials
  Part 4: 2005 Fire-resistance tests of elements of building construction
AS 1566: 1997 Cooper and copper alloys – Rolled flat products
AS 1579: 2001 Arc welded steel pipes and fittings for water and waste water
AS 1589: 2001 Copper and copper alloy waste fittings
AS 1646: 2007 Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes
AS 1668:- The use of mechanical ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings
  Part 2: 2002 Ventilation design for indoor-air containment control
  Amend: 1, 2
AS 1670:- Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems
  – System design, installation and commissioning
  Part 6: 1997 Smoke alarms
AS 1691: 1985 Domestic oil-fired appliances – installation
AS 1741: 1991 Vitrified clay pipes and fittings with flexible joints – Sewerage quality
AS 1804: 1976 Soft lead sheet and strip
AS 1851: 2005 Maintenance of fire protection equipment
AS 1976: 1992 Vitreous china used in sanitary appliances
AS 2033: 2008 Installation of polyethylene pipe systems
AS 2049: 2002 Roof tiles
AS 2050: 2002 Installation of roof tiles
AS 2159: 1995 Rules for the design and installation of piling (known as the SAA Piling Code)
  Amend: 1
AS 2220:- Emergency warning and intercommunication systems in buildings
  Part 1: 1989 Equipment design and manufacture
  Part 2: 1989 System design, installation and commissioning
Where quoted
  C/AS1
  C/AS1
  C/AS1
  E2/AS1
  E1/AS1, G13/AS2
  G13/AS1
  E1/AS1
  G4/AS1
  G4/AS1
  F7/AS1
  C/AS1
  E1/AS1, G14/VM1
  E2/AS1, SH/AS1
  HB/SS 1, SS 2, SS 5, SS 9, SS 13, SS 15
  G1/AS1
  G14/VM1, E1/AS1
  E2/AS1, SH/AS1
  E2/VM1
  B1/VM4
  C/AS1
  C/AS1
Publications Referenced

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AS 2293:</th>
<th>Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2005</td>
<td>System design, installation and operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1995</td>
<td>Inspection and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 2005</td>
<td>Emergency escape luminaires and exit signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2845:-</td>
<td>Water supply – Mechanical backflow prevention devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 1993</td>
<td>Field testing and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2870: 1996</td>
<td>Residential slabs and footings – Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2887: 1993</td>
<td>Plastic waste fittings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2890:-</td>
<td>Parking facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2004</td>
<td>Off-street parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2002</td>
<td>Off-street commercial facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3566</td>
<td>Self-drilling screws for the building and construction industries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2002</td>
<td>Corrosion resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3588: 1996</td>
<td>Shower bases and shower modules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3688: 2005</td>
<td>Water supply – Copper and copper alloy compression and capillary fittings and threaded end connectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3690: 2009</td>
<td>Installation of ABS pipe systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3706:-</td>
<td>Geotextiles – Methods of test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2003</td>
<td>General requirements, sampling, conditioning, basic physical properties and statistical analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3730</td>
<td>Guide to the properties of paints for buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 7: 1992</td>
<td>Latex – Exterior – Flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 8: 1992</td>
<td>Latex – Exterior – Low gloss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where quoted

- F6/AS1
- G12/AS1, HB/SS 7
- SH/AS1
- G13/AS1
- D1/AS1
- E2/AS1, SH/AS1
- G13/AS2
- G1/AS1
- G10/AS1
- G14/VM1
- E1/VM1
- SH/AS1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AS 3730</th>
<th>Guide to the properties of paints for buildings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part 7: 2006</td>
<td>Latex – Exterior – Flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 8: 2006</td>
<td>Latex – Exterior – Low gloss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3786: 1993</td>
<td>Smoke alarms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AS 4046</th>
<th>Methods of testing roof tiles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part 9: 2002</td>
<td>Determination of dynamic weather resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4072:-</td>
<td>Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant separating elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2005</td>
<td>Service penetrations and control joints</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| AS 4139: 2003 | Fibre reinforced concrete pipes and fittings |
| AS 4178: 1994 | Electromagnetic door holders |

| AS 4276:- | Water plate microbiology – Pour plate method using plate count agar |
| Part 3.1: 2007 |

| AS 4290: 2000 | Design and installation of revolving doors |
| Amend: 1, 2 |

| AS 5007: 2007 | Powered doors for pedestrian access and egress |
| AS 60188.4: 2007 | Hearing aids – magnetic field strength in audio-frequency induction loops for hearing aid purposes |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G13/AS2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HB/SS 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HB/SS 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HB/SS 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HB/SS 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## British Standards Institution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amend</th>
<th>BS Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oct 2011</td>
<td>BS 10: 2009</td>
<td>Specification for flanges and bolting for pipes, valves and fittings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct 2011</td>
<td>BS 143, and BS 1256: 2000</td>
<td>Threaded pipe fittings in malleable cast iron and cast copper alloy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>BS 437: 2008</td>
<td>Specification for cast iron spigot and socket drain pipes and fittings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>BS 585:- Part 1: 1989</td>
<td>Wood stairs for stairs with closed risers for domestic use, including straight and winder flights and quarter or half landings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>BS EN 988: 1997</td>
<td>Zinc and zinc alloys. Specification for rolled flat products for building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>BS EN 1044:1999</td>
<td>Brazing. Filler metals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>BS EN 1172: 1997</td>
<td>Copper and copper alloys – sheet and strip for building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>BS EN 1490: 2000</td>
<td>Building valves. Combined temperature and pressure relief valves. Tests and requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>BS EN 1491: 2000</td>
<td>Building valves. Expansion valves. Tests and requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>BS EN 1595: 1997</td>
<td>Pressure equipment made from borosilicate glass 3.3 – general rules for design, manufacture and testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Where quoted

- **G10/AS1**: BS 10: 2009
- **G10/AS1, G14/VM1**: BS 143, and BS 1256: 2000
- **F1/VM1**: BSDD 175: 1988
- **G13/AS2**: BS 437: 2008
- **D1/AS1**: BS 585:- Part 1: 1989
- **E2/AS1**: BS EN 988: 1997
- **G10/AS1**: BS EN 1044:1999
- **E1/AS1**: BS EN 1172: 1997
- **G12/AS1**: BS EN 1490: 2000
- **G12/AS1**: BS EN 1491: 2000
- **G12/AS1**: BS EN 1567: 1999
- **G14/VM1**: BS EN 1595: 1997
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 1759</td>
<td>Flanges and their joints. Circular flanges for pipes, valves, fittings and accessories, class-designated. Steel flanges, NPS 1/2 to 24.</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 2971: 1991</td>
<td>Specification for Class II arc welding of carbon steel pipework for carrying fluids</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 3402: 1969</td>
<td>Specification for quality of vitreous china sanitary appliances</td>
<td>G1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 4790: 1996</td>
<td>Method for determination of the effects of a small source of ignition on textile floor coverings (hot metal nut method)</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5287: 1996</td>
<td>Specification for assessment and labelling of textile floor coverings tested to BS 4790</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5378:-</td>
<td>Safety signs and colours</td>
<td>F8/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1980</td>
<td>Specification for colour and design</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5395:-</td>
<td>Stairs, ladders and walkways</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1984</td>
<td>Code of practice for the design of helical and spiral stairs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5446:-</td>
<td>Components of automatic fire alarm systems for residential premises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1990</td>
<td>Specification for self-contained smoke alarms and point-type smoke detectors</td>
<td>F7/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amends: 6863, 7648, 9628</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6037:-</td>
<td>Code of practice for the Planning, design, installation and use of permanently installed access equipment</td>
<td>HB/SS 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2003</td>
<td>Suspended access equipment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2004</td>
<td>Travelling ladders and gantries</td>
<td>HB/SS 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BS 6374:- Lining of equipment with polymeric materials for the process industries
Part 1: 1985 Specification for lining with sheet thermoplastics
Part 2: 1984 Specification for lining with non-sheet applied thermoplastics
Part 3: 1984 Specification for lining with stoved thermostetting resins
Part 4: 1984 Specification for lining with cold curing thermostetting resins
Part 5: 1985 Specification for lining with rubbers
BS 6464: 1984 Specification for reinforced plastics pipes, fittings and joints for process plants
BS 6538: 1987 Air permeance of paper and board
Part 3: 1987 Method for determination of air permeance using the Garley apparatus

BS 6920:- Suitability of non-metallic products for use in contact with water intended for human consumption with regard to their effect on the quality of the water
Part 2: 2000 Methods of tests
Part 3: 2000 High temperature tests

BS 7159: 1989 Code of practice for design and construction of glass-reinforced plastics (GRP) piping systems for individual plants or sites

BS 7777: 1993 Flat bottomed, vertical, cylindrical storage tanks for low temperature service
Part 1: Guide to the general provisions applying for design, construction and installation
Part 2: Specification for design and construction of single, double and full containment metal tanks for the storage of liquified gas at temperatures down to –165°C
Part 3: Recommendations for the design and construction of prestressed and reinforced concrete tanks and tank foundations and for the design and installation of tank insulation, tank lines and tank coating

BS 8004: 1986 Code of practice for foundations

BS EN 10241: 2000 Steel threaded pipe fittings
BS EN 10253-2: 2007 Butt-welding pipe fittings – non-alloy and ferric alloy steels with specific inspection requirements
Publications Referenced

BS EN 10253-3: 2008 Butt-welding pipe fittings – wrought austenitic and austenitic-ferritic (duplex) stainless steels without specific inspection requirements


BS EN 12285: Workshop fabricated steel tanks
   Part 1: 2003 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the underground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids
   Part 2: 2005 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the aboveground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids

BS EN 12585: 1999 Glass plant, pipeline and fittings – Pipeline and fittings DN 15 to 1000 – compatibility and interchangeability

BS EN 13121-3: 2008 GRP tanks and vessels for use above ground. Design and workmanship
   Amend: 1 (2010)

BS EN 14324: 2004 Brazing. Guidance on the application of brazed joints

New Zealand Publications

Building Research Association of New Zealand

   Appendix 1

BRANZ Bulletin 411: 2001 Recommended timber cladding profiles

BRANZ EM 4: 2005 Evaluation method for jointing systems for flush finished fibre cement sheet

BRANZ EM 5: 2005 Evaluation method for adhesives and seam tapes for butyl and EPDM rubber membranes

BRANZ EM 6: 2011 Evaluation method for window and door support mechanisms or bars

BRANZ House Insulation Guide: 1995

BRANZ Paper C1: 1978 A construction guide to home insulation (second edition)

BRANZ Technical paper P21: 1991 A wall bracing test and evaluation procedure

BRANZ Supplement to P21 An evaluation method of P21 test results for use with NZS 3604: 1990

BRANZ Technical paper P36: 1983 Food processing floors, a guide to design, materials and construction. W.R. Sharman
BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 Structural joints – strength and stiffness evaluation

Albrecht Stoecklein and Mark Bassett

Cement & Concrete Association of New Zealand
CCANZ CP01: 2011 Code of Practice for weathertight concrete and concrete masonry construction

Master Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers NZ Inc and Water New Zealand
NZ Backflow testing standard 2011AS1 3.6.1 b), 3.7.2 Field testing of backflow prevention devices and verification of air gaps

New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc
New Zealand Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice: 2008

The National Association of Steel Framed Housing Inc (NASH)
NASH Standard: Residential and Low Rise Steel Framing Part 1 2010 Design Criteria

Government Departments and Agencies

Department of Labour
Workplace exposure standards and biological indices for New Zealand: 1992

Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries
MQ 1: 1988 Qual approvals manual

Ministry of Economic Development
NZECP 34: 2001 Electrical safety distances
NZECP 36: 1993 Harmonic levels
NZECP 51: 2004 Homeowner/occupier’s electrical wiring work in domestic installations
NZECP 54: 2001 Installation of recessed luminaires and auxiliary equipment

Ministry of Health
Ministry of Health: 2005 Drinking Water Standards for New Zealand
Ministry of Health: 2006 Household water supplies: the selection, operation and maintenance of individual household water supplies

Where quoted

SH/AS1
H1/Defs
E2/AS3
G12/AS1, HB/SS 7
E2/AS1
B1/AS1
F1/VM1, G4/VM1
G3/AS1
G9/VM1
G9/VM1
C/AS1, G9/AS1
SH/AS1
SH/AS1
**Ministry of Transport**

Power Lift Rules: 1989

Rules for power lifts not exceeding 750 watts (one horsepower): 1985

**SCION**

Measurement of moisture content of wood

**National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd (NIWA)**

Temperature Normals for New Zealand 1961-1990

by A I Tomlinson and J Sansom (ISBN 0478083343)

**New Zealand Legislation**

Chartered Professional Engineers of New Zealand Act 2002

Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987

Fire Safety and Evacuation of Buildings Regulations 2006

Gas Regulations 1993

Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996

Hazardous Substances (Classification) Regulations 2001

Hazardous Substances (Classes 1 to 5 Controls) Regulations 2001

Hazardous Substances (Dangerous Goods and Scheduled Toxic Substances) Transfer Notice 2004

Hazardous Substances (Disposal) Regulations 2001

Hazardous Substances (Emergency Management) Regulations 2001

Health & Safety in Employment Act 1992

Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 2006

Resource Management Act 1991

Resource Management (National Environment Standards relating to certain Pollutants, Dioxins and other Toxins) Regulations: 2004 (NESAQ)

**New Zealand Geomechanics Society**

Guidelines for the field descriptions of soils and rocks in engineering use. Nov 1988

**Australian Publications**

**Building Control Commission, State of Victoria, Australia**

Smoke management in large spaces in buildings: 1998

Milke and Klote

---

**Where quoted**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ministry of Transport</td>
<td>D2/AS2, HB/SS 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCION</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd (NIWA)</td>
<td>H1/Defs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand Legislation</td>
<td>B1/VM1, C/AS1, G12/AS1, F3/VM1, G14/VM1, SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand Geomechanics Society</td>
<td>B1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Publications</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Australia/NZ Publications

Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council
Guidelines for assessment and management of contaminated sites: 1992

British Publications

Building Research Establishment (UK)
BRE Defect action sheet DAS 131: May 1989
External walls: Combustible external plastics insulation: Horizontal fire barriers
BRE Report 135: 1988
BRE Report 186: 1990
Design principles for smoke ventilation in enclosed shopping centres. Morgan and Gardner
BRE Report 258: 1992
Design approaches for smoke control in atrium buildings. Hansell and Morgan

Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers, London
CIBSE Code Series A: 1996
Air distribution systems

International Publications

EIFS Industry Members Association
EIMA 101.91: 1992 Standard Guide for resin of resin coated glass fibre mesh in exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS), Class PB.

The European Committee for Standardisation
EN 81:- Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts
Part 1: 1998 Electric lifts
Part 2: 1998 Hydraulic lifts
EN 115: 1983 Safety rules for the construction of escalators and passenger conveyors
EN 12380: 1999 Air admittance valves for drainage systems – Requirements and test methods
Eurocode 1: Basis of design actions on structures
Part 2.2: Actions on structures exposed to fire
International Standards Organisation, Geneva

ICBO Evaluation Services Inc AC148: Acceptance criteria for flashing materials

ISO 140/VII: 1978 Field measurements of impact sound insulation of floors

ISO 9223: 1992 Corrosion of metals and alloys; corrosivity of atmospheres; classification

ISO 11600: 2002 Building Construction – Jointing products Classification and requirements for sealants


World Health Organisation/Food and Agriculture Organisation

Environmental Health Criteria 70


IARC Monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans for individual chemicals, groups of chemicals, or processes. Published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer Principles for the safety assessment of food additives and contaminants in food, Geneva: 1987

Where quoted

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publications Referenced</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G6/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
United States of America Publications

American National Standards Institute and
American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ANSI/ASME B16.1: 1989 Cast iron pipe flanges and flanged fittings,
Class 25, 125, 250 and 800
ANSI/ASME B16.3: 1985 Malleable-iron threaded fittings,
Classes 150 and 300
ANSI/ASME B16.5: 1988 Pipe flanges and flanged fittings, steel-nickel
alloy and other special alloys
fittings
ANSI B16.11: 1980 Forged steel fittings, socket-welding and threaded

American Petroleum Institute
API SPEC 5L: 1991 Specification for line pipe
API STD 1104: 1988 Welding of pipelines and related facilities

American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air
Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)
Design of smoke management systems. Kkote and Milke 1992

American Society of Sanitary Engineers
ASSE 1050: 1991 Performance requirements for air admittance
valves for plumbing DWV systems stack
type devices
ASSE 1051: 1992 Performance requirements for air admittance
valves for plumbing drainage systems

American Society for Testing and Materials
ASTM A 53 – 90a Specification for pipe, steel, black and hot-dipped,
zinc-coated welded and seamless
ASTM A 106 – 91a Specification for seamless carbon steel pipe for
high temperature service

Where quoted
G10/AS1
ASTM D 1143: 1981 Test method for piles under static axial compressive load


ASTM D 2240: 2005 Standard Test method for Rubber Property


ASTM E 96: 2005 Standard test methods for water vapour transmission of materials


ASTM E 336: 1990 Method for measurement of airborne sound insulation in buildings

ASTM E 413: 1987 Classification for rating sound insulation

ASTM E 492: 1990 Test method for laboratory measurement of impact sound transmission through floor-ceiling assemblies using a tapping machine


ASTM E 989: 1989 Classification for determination of impact insulation class (IIC)


Where quoted

B1/VM4

SH/AS1

E2/AS1

SH/AS1

E2/AS1

SH/AS1

E2/AS1

G6/VM1

G6/VM1

G6/VM1

SH/AS1

G6/VM1

E2/AS1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publications Referenced</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12 Oct 2011</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM G 154: 2006 Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12 Oct 2011</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>International Conference of Building Officials, America</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform Building Code Standard 26-2: 1997 Test method for the evaluation of thermal barriers</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>National Fire Protection Association of America</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFPA 92B: 1995 Guide for smoke management systems in malls, atria and large areas</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFPA 285: 1998 Standard method of test for the evaluation of flammability characteristics of exterior non load bearing wall assemblies containing components using the intermediate scale, multi-storey test apparatus</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USEPA SW 846: 1986 Test methods for evaluating solid waste</td>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Specification Standard TT-S-00230C: Elastomeric type, cold applied single component for caulking, sealing, and glazing in buildings, building areas (plazas, decks, pavements, and other structures)</td>
<td>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
United States Public Health Service
Toxicological profiles on individual chemicals. Prepared by the Agency for Toxicological Substances and Disease Registry, in collaboration with the US Environmental Protection Agency

Miscellaneous Publication

Where quoted
F1/VM1
Definitions

Many of the definitions in this section come from the Building Act 2004, regulations, including the Building Code, and Compliance Documents. Although every effort has been made to ensure definitions are accurate at the time of publication, it is possible that definitions may become out of date as changes occur to the legislation and Compliance Documents. In the event there is any discrepancy between the definitions in this section and the definitions in the legislation or Compliance Documents, the definitions in the legislation and Compliance Documents will prevail.

Note that some legislation and Compliance Documents may contain different definitions for the terms listed below. When using particular legislation or a Compliance Document, reference should be made to the definitions provided in that document.

Source Key:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Key</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BA04</td>
<td>Building Act 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR1</td>
<td>Building Regulations 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR2</td>
<td>Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-prone Buildings) Regulations 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>New Zealand Building Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EA</td>
<td>Electricity Act 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSA</td>
<td>Fire Service Act 1975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HB</td>
<td>Handbook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSNOA</td>
<td>Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LGA</td>
<td>Local Government Act 1974 or 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGDA</td>
<td>Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA</td>
<td>Railway Act 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMA</td>
<td>Resource Management Act 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD-(Code clause)</td>
<td>Compliance Document for given Code clause (eg, CD-G13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DG</td>
<td>Building Consent Authority Development Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple House</td>
<td>Simple House Acceptable Solution</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abutment</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptable risk</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptable Solution</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access chamber</td>
<td>CD-E1, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access point</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access route</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abutment The part of the valley side against which the dam is constructed.

Acceptable risk The level of risk the public is prepared to accept without further management. The risk is the combination of the probability and the consequence of a specified hazardous event.

Acceptable Solution means a solution that must be accepted as complying with the Building Code.

Access chamber A chamber with working space at drain level through which the drain passes either as an open channel or as a pipe incorporating an inspection point.

Access point A place where access may be made to a drain or discharge pipe for inspection, cleaning or maintenance; and may include a cleaning eye, inspection point, rodding point, inspection chamber or access chamber.

Access route A continuous route that permits people and goods to move between the apron or construction edge of the building to spaces within a building, and between spaces within a building.
Definition | Source
--- | ---
Accessible | Code
Having features to permit use by people with disabilities.
Accessible route | Code
An access route usable by people with disabilities.
It shall be a continuous route that can be negotiated unaided by a wheelchair user. The route shall extend from street boundary or car parking area to those spaces within the building required to be accessible to enable people with disabilities to carry out normal activities and processes within the building.
Accessible stairway | CD-C
A stairway having features for use by a person with a disability. Buildings required to be accessible shall have at least one accessible stairway leading off an accessible route whether or not a lift is provided.
Accreditation certificate | HB
means a certificate that was issued by the Building Industry Authority under the Building Act 1991.
COMMENT:
Accreditation certificates have become product certificates under the Building Act 2004 and are subject to the product certification scheme under the Building Act 2004.
Active conductor | CD-F8
Any conductor in which the electrical potential differs from that of a neutral conductor or earth.
Adequate | Code
means Adequate to achieve the objectives of the Building Code.
Adjacent building | Code
A nearby building, including an adjoining building, whether or not erected on other property.
Air gap | CD-G12
The vertical distance through air between the lowest point of the water supply outlet and the flood level rim of the equipment or the fixture into which the outlet discharges.
Air admittance valve | CD-G13
A valve that allows air to enter but not to escape in order to limit pressure fluctuations within the sanitary plumbing or drainage system.
Air seal | CD-E2
A continuous seal fitted between a window or door reveal and the surrounding wall framing to prevent the flow of air into the interior of the building.
Allotment | BA04
has the meaning given to it by section 10 of the Building Act 2004.
Section 10 states:
“(1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, allotment means a parcel of land—
(a) that is a continuous area of land; and
(b) whose boundaries are shown on a survey plan, whether or not as a subdivision—
(i) approved by way of a subdivision consent granted under the Resource Management Act 1991; or
(ii) allowed or granted under any other Act; and
(c) that is—
(i) subject to the Land Transfer Act 1952 and comprised in 1 certificate of title or for which 1 certificate of title could be issued under that Act; or
(ii) not subject to that Act and was acquired by its owner under 1 instrument of conveyance.
## Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), an allotment is taken—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) to be a continuous area of land even if part of it is physically</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separated from any other part by a road or in any other manner,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unless the division of the allotment into those parts has been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allowed by a subdivision consent granted under the Resource</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Act 1991 or a subdivision approval under any</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>former enactment relating to the subdivision of land:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) to include the balance of any land from which any allotment is being</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or has been subdivided.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alter</strong> in relation to a <em>building</em>, includes to rebuild, re-erect,</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repair, enlarge and extend the <em>building</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alternative solution</strong> means a solution that is compliant with the</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Building Code</em> but is not part of the <em>Compliance Document</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aluminium flashings</strong> Aluminium <em>flashings</em> shall be a minimum</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thickness of 0.7 mm, and formed from 5000 series in accordance with AS/NZS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1734 and, where pre-painted, have a factory-applied finish complying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with AS/NZS 2728.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aluminium-zinc coated steel flashings</strong> Aluminium-zinc coated steel</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flashings shall be:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) <strong>BMT</strong> 0.55 mm minimum of steel for <em>flashings</em> generally</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) <strong>BMT</strong> 0.4 mm of steel for roll-formed roll-top ridge <em>flashings</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) in aluminium-zinc coating of AZ150 to AS 1397, with a factory-applied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish in accordance with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in sea spray zone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and corrosion zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amenity</strong> means an attribute of a <em>building</em> which contributes to the</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health, physical independence, and well being of the <em>building</em>’s users but which is not associated with disease or a specific illness.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anti-ponding board</strong> A board laid under the lowest row of concrete and clay roof tiles and supports the <em>roof underlay</em>. The board is sloped to ensure moisture under the tiles is directed to the exterior of the roof.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Appliance hearth</strong> A layer of <em>non-combustible</em> material under or near an appliance. It may be either part of the <em>building</em> structure or an overlay on a <em>combustible</em> floor.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Approved temperature data</strong> means the temperature data contained in</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Appurtenant structure</strong>, in relation to a <em>dam</em>, means a structure that is integral to the proper functioning of the <em>dam</em>.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apron flashing</strong> A near flat or sloping <em>flashing</em> with a vertical upstand, used at junctions between roofs and walls.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Asbestos</strong> as defined by the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1983 means:</td>
<td>CD-F2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Actinolite, amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or tremolite; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph (a) of this definition; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of any such mineral; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) A material or article that is contaminated by any such material.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asbestos now has the meaning given to it by Regulation 2 of the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1998. This meaning is:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous actinolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or fibrous tremolite; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) A material or article that is contaminated by a mineral specified in paragraph (a);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Atmospheric burner</strong> A burner system where all the air for combustion is induced by the inspirating effect of a gas injector and/or by natural draught in the combustion chamber without mechanical assistance.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attached garage</strong> A garage that shares a common wall or walls with a habitable building, and is enclosed by roof and wall claddings that are continuous with the habitable part of the building.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Authority</strong> means the Building Industry Authority that was established under the Building Act 1991.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Authority was dissolved under the Building Act 2004 and its functions and powers transferred to the Department of Building and Housing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backcountry hut</strong> means a building that—</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) is located on land that is administered by the Department of Conservation for conservation, recreational, scientific, or other related purposes, including any land administered under any of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) the Conservation Act 1987;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) the National Parks Act 1980;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) the Reserves Act 1977; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) is intended to provide overnight shelter to any person who may visit and who carries his or her own food, bedding, clothing, and outdoor equipment; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) contains only basic facilities, which may include (but are not limited to) any or all of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) sleeping platforms or bunks;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) mattresses;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) food preparation surfaces;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(iv) appliances for heating:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) appliances for cooking:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vi) toilets; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) has been certified by the Director-General as being in a location that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wheelchair users are unlikely to be able to visit; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) is intended to be able to sleep—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) no more than 20 people in its backcountry hut sleeping area; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) no more than 40 people in total; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) does not contain any connection, except by radiocommunications,</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to a network utility operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backcountry hut sleeping area</strong> means the area of a backcountry hut</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that contains sleeping platforms, bunks, or beds that are—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) within the same room as a food preparation or eating area; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) in a fully enclosed room that is separate from any food preparation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or eating area and has—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) internal walls that limit the spread of fire; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) the means of direct egress to outside the hut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backflow</strong> A flowing back or reversal of the normal direction of the</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flow caused by back-pressure and includes back-siphonage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backflow prevention device</strong> A device that prevents backflow.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backing rod</strong> Closed cell polyethylene foam (PEF) rod inserted into</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap to provide backing support for foam air seal or sealant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Back-pressure</strong> A backflow condition caused by the downstream pressure</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>becoming greater than the supply pressure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Back-siphonage</strong> Backflow condition caused by the supply pressure</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>becoming less than the downstream pressure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Baluster</strong> A post providing the support for the top and bottom rails</td>
<td>CD-B1, CD-B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of a barrier.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Baluster</strong> An infill member that provides support for the top and</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-F4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom rails of a barrier.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Balustrade</strong> The infill parts of a barrier (typically between floor and</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top rail).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Basement</strong> Any firecell or part of a firecell below the level of the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lowest final exit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMMENT:**
Because fire safety precautions are increased with increases in escape height, the precautions for basements increase with basement depth. Thus a single floor building with one basement level is treated as a two floor building, a single floor building with three basement levels as a four floor building and the requirements of C/AS1 Table 4.1 shall be applied downwards as opposed to upwards for levels above ground.

**Base metal thickness (BMT)** The thickness of the bare or base metal before any subsequent coating, such as galvanizing.

**Batten** See ceiling batten, tile batten.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bird’s beak</strong></td>
<td>A double fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal <em>flashing</em> to stiffen the edge and to assist in deflecting moisture away from the <em>cladding system</em> below. Refer also <em>Kick-out</em> and <em>Drip edge</em>. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td>A <em>bird’s beak</em> is used at the bottom of a <em>capping</em> to deflect water away from the <em>enclosed balustrade cladding</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blocking</strong></td>
<td>Solid timber having the same depth as the joists and set at right angles between the joists to stiffen and prevent them from buckling. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bond, running or stretcher</strong></td>
<td>The <em>bond</em> when the units of each course overlap the units in the preceding course by between 25% and 75% of the length of the units. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bottom plate</strong></td>
<td>A plate placed under the bottom end of <em>studs</em>. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Boundary</strong></td>
<td>means any <em>boundary</em> which is shown on a survey plan approved by the Chief Surveyor and which is deposited in the Titles Office whether or not a new title has been issued. CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Boundary joist</strong></td>
<td>A joist running along the outer ends of the floor joists. CD-B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing</strong></td>
<td>Any method employed to provide lateral support to a <em>building</em>. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing capacity</strong></td>
<td>Strength of <em>bracing</em> of a whole <em>building</em> or of elements within a <em>building</em>. <em>Bracing capacity</em> is measured in <em>bracing units</em> (BUs). Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing demand</strong></td>
<td>The horizontal forces to be resisted by a whole <em>building</em> or by an element within a <em>building</em>. These horizontal forces are a result of wind or earthquake action. <em>Bracing demand</em> forces are measured in <em>bracing units</em> (BUs). Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing line</strong></td>
<td>A line along or across a <em>building</em> containing <em>wall bracing elements</em>. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing rating</strong></td>
<td>The lateral load resistance assigned, for example, to a <em>wall bracing system</em>. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing unit (BU)</strong></td>
<td>A <em>bracing unit</em> is a measure of: (a) the horizontal force (<em>bracing demand</em>) on the <em>building</em> (1 kiloNewton is equal to 20 bracing units)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) the resistance to horizontal force (<em>bracing capacity</em>) of <em>building elements</em>. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Branch discharge pipe</strong></td>
<td>A <em>discharge pipe</em> that serves one or more <em>fixture discharge pipes</em> for any one floor. CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Branch vent pipe</strong></td>
<td>A <em>vent pipe</em> that serves two or more <em>fixture vent pipes</em>. CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building</strong></td>
<td>has the meaning given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>. BA04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 8 states:

**“8 Building: what it means and includes:**

1. In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, *building*—
   (a) means a temporary or permanent movable or immovable structure (including a structure intended for occupation by people, animals, machinery, or chattels); and
(b) includes—
   (i) a mechanical, electrical, or other system; and
   (ii) a fence as defined in section 2 of the Fencing of Swimming
       Pools Act 1987; and
   2(1) of the Land Transport Act 1998) that is immovable
       and is occupied by people on a permanent or long term basis; and
   (iii) a vehicle or motor vehicle (including a vehicle or motor vehicle
       as defined in section
   (iv) a mast pole or a telecommunication aerial that is on, or forms
       part of, a building and that is more than 7 m in height above
       the point of its attachment or base support (except a dish aerial
       that is less than 2 m wide); and
   (c) includes any 2 or more buildings that, on completion of building work,
       are intended to be managed as one building with a common use and
       a common set of ownership arrangements; and
   (d) includes the non-moving parts of a cable car attached to or servicing
       a building; and
   (e) after 30 March 2008, includes the moving parts of a cable car attached
       to or servicing a building

(2) Subsection (1)(b)(i) only applies if—
   (a) the mechanical, electrical, or other system is attached to the structure
       referred to in subsection (1)(a); and
   (b) the system—
       (i) is required by the Building Code; or
       (ii) if installed, is required to comply with the Building Code.

(3) Subsection (1)(c) only applies in relation to—
   (a) subpart 2 of Part 2; and
   (b) a building consent; and
   (c) a code compliance certificate; and
   (d) a compliance schedule.

(4) This section is subject to section 9."

Section 9 states:

"9 Building: what it does not include
In this Act, building does not include—
(a) a NUO system, or part of a NUO system, that—
   (i) is external to the building; and
   (ii) is connected to, or is intended to be connected to, the building
       to provide for the successful functioning of the NUO system in
       accordance with the system’s intended design and purpose; and
   (iii) is not a mast pole or a telecommunication aerial that is on,
       or forms part of, a building; or
(b) cranes (including any cranes as defined in regulations made
    under the Health and Safety in Employment Act 1992); or
(c) any of the following, whether or not incorporated within another
    structure:
    (i) ski tows;
    (ii) other similar stand-alone machinery systems; or
(d) any description of vessel, boat, ferry, or craft used in navigation—
   (i) whether or not it has a means of propulsion; and
   (ii) regardless of what that means of propulsion is; or
(e) aircraft (including any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere
      from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the
      air against the surface of the earth); or
(f) any offshore installation (as defined in section 222 of the Maritime
Transport Act 1994) to be used for petroleum mining; or
(g) containers as defined in section 2(1) of the Hazardous Substances
      and New Organisms Act 1996; or
(h) magazines as defined in section 222 of the Hazardous Substances
      and New Organisms Act 1996; or
   (i) scaffolding used in the course of the construction process; or
(j) falsework.”

**Building Act 2004** (the Building Act) means the principal legislation dealing
with building controls in New Zealand.

**COMMENT:**
The Building Act applies to the construction, alteration, and demolition of new and existing
buildings throughout New Zealand.

**Building certifier** means a person approved as a building certifier by the
Authority under the former Act.

**COMMENT:**
Building certifiers are not provided for under the Building Act 2004. There are no longer any building certifiers.

**Building Code** means the regulations made under section 400 of the

**COMMENT:**
No regulations have yet been made under section 400 of the Building Act 2004.
However, the Building Code is currently the First Schedule of the Building Regulations 1992,
which continue in force under regulation 8(2) of the Building Forms (Regulations) 2004.

**Building consent** means a consent to carry out building work granted

**Building consent** A consent issued by a building consent authority for building
work to begin in accordance with the approved plans and specifications.

**Building consent accreditation body** means the person referred to
in section 248(2) of the Building Act 2004.

**Building consent authority (BCA)** means a person whose name is entered

**Building element** Any structural and non-structural component and assembly
incorporated into or associated with a building. Included are fixtures, services,
drains, permanent mechanical installations for access, glazing, partitions,
ceilings and temporary supports.
### Building height
The vertical distance between the floor level of the lowest final exit from the building; and the highest occupied floor level containing or supporting any purpose group other than IE, IA or ID, or penthouses used to enclose stairways, liftshafts or machinery rooms located on or within the roof.

### Building levy

### Building method or product
Has the meaning given to it by section 20 of the Building Act 2004. Section 20(2)(c) states:

“(c) building methods, methods of construction, building design, or building materials (building methods or products) that have a current product certificate issued under section 269.”

### Building performance index (BPI)
In relation to a building, means the heating energy of the building divided by the product of the heating degrees total and the sum of the floor area and the total wall area, and so is calculated in accordance with the following formula:

\[
BPI = \frac{\text{heating energy}}{\text{heating degrees total} \times (\text{floor area} + \text{total wall area})}
\]

### Building work—
(a) means work—
   (i) for, or in connection with, the construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building; and
   (ii) on an allotment that is likely to affect the extent to which an existing building on that allotment complies with the Building Code; and

(b) includes sitework; and

(c) includes design work (relating to building work) that is design work of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be building work for the purposes of this Act; and

(d) in Part 4, and the definition in this section of “supervise”, also includes design work (relating to building work) of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be building work for the purposes of Part 4.

### Building warrant of fitness (BWoF)
Means the warrant of fitness an owner of a building must supply to a territorial authority under section 108 of the Building Act 2004.
**Butt flashing** A preformed wall *flashing*, used to flash windows and corners on horizontal profiled metal wall *cladding*. A *butt flashing* is shaped to underflash the *cladding*, with the *cladding* butting against the exposed box portion of the *flashing*.

**Butyl rubber** and **EPDM flashings** Butyl rubber and EPDM flashings shall be a minimum thickness of 1.0 mm, and shall comply with the following parts of Table 1 in ASTM D6134:

- (b) tensile strength
- (c) elongation
- (d) water absorption
- (e) water vapour transmission
- (f) heat aging followed by:
  - i) tensile strength
  - ii) elongation.

**Cable car**—

(a) means a vehicle—

(i) that carries people or goods on or along an inclined plane or a suspended cable; and

(ii) that operates wholly or partly outside of a *building*;

And

(iii) the traction for which is supplied by a cable or any other means; but

(b) does not include a lift that carries people or goods between the floors of a *building*.

**Cantilevered deck** A *deck* where no support is provided at the outer extremities of the *deck*.

**COMMENT:**

*Cantilevered decks are often constructed by extending framing members through the cladding beyond the building face. Cantilevered decks are sometimes known as balconies.*

**Canterbury earthquake region** is the area contained within the boundaries of the Christchurch City Council, the Selwyn District Council and the Waimakariri District Council.

**Capacity** The load resistance of a connector or fixing.

**Capping** A *flashing* formed to cover the top of an *enclosed balustrade* or parapet. Also known as a coping.

**Cavity barrier** A construction provided to close openings within a *concealed space* against the passage of *fire*, or to restrict the spread of *fire* within such spaces.

**Cavity batten** A vertical packing member used to create a *drained cavity* as part of a *cladding system*. 
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cavity spacer</strong></td>
<td>A short block used to provide intermittent support for fixings or pipe penetrations through a <em>drained cavity</em>, while not interrupting drainage within the cavity. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cavity wall</strong></td>
<td>A term used to describe a wall that incorporates a <em>drained cavity</em>. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ceiling batten</strong></td>
<td>A horizontal member fixed below <em>rafters</em>, or truss bottom chords to which the ceiling <em>lining</em> is attached. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Certificate of acceptance</strong></td>
<td>means a certificate issued under section 96 of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>. BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Certificate for public use</strong></td>
<td>means a certificate issued under section 363A <em>HB</em> of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Change the use</strong></td>
<td>for the purposes of sections 114 and 115 of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>, change the use, in relation to a <em>building</em>, means to change the use (determined in accordance with regulation 6) of all or a part of the <em>building</em> from one use (the old use) to another (the new use) and with the result that the requirements for compliance with the <em>Building Code</em> in relation to the new use are additional to, or more onerous than, the requirements for compliance with the <em>Building Code</em> in relation to the old use. BR2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Check valve (or non-return valve)</strong></td>
<td>A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a <em>backflow prevention device</em>. CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney</strong></td>
<td>A <em>non-combustible</em> structure which encloses one or more <em>flues</em>, <em>fireplaces</em> or other heating appliances. CD-B1, CD-C, CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney back</strong></td>
<td>The <em>non-combustible</em> wall forming the back of a <em>fireplace</em>. CD-B1, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney base</strong></td>
<td>That part of a <em>chimney</em> which houses the <em>fireplace</em>. CD-B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney breast</strong></td>
<td>The front <em>fireplace wall construction</em> above the <em>fireplace</em> opening. CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney jams</strong></td>
<td>The side walls of a <em>fireplace</em>. CD-B1, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cladding</strong></td>
<td>The exterior weather-resistant surface of a <em>building</em>. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cladding system</strong></td>
<td>The outside or exterior weather-resistant surface of a <em>building</em>, including <em>roof cladding</em> and <em>roof underlays</em>, <em>wall cladding</em> and <em>wall underlays</em>, and cavity components, rooflights, windows, doors and all penetrations, <em>flashings</em>, seals, joints and junctions. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Classified use</strong></td>
<td>means a <em>classified use</em> listed in clause A1 of the <em>Building Code</em>. BR1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cleaning eye</strong></td>
<td>A small <em>diameter access point</em> usually formed as part of a fitting or trap. CD-G13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definitions

Cleared ground level (CGL) The ground level after completion of site excavation and removal of all harmful material, but before excavation for foundations. 


Combined waste pipe A discharge pipe which serves two or more waste pipes.

Combustible See non-combustible.

Combustion appliance A slow combustion stove, a free standing metal cone fireplace, a cast iron pot belly stove, an oil burning space heater, or a vented gas burning heater.

Common extract duct A mechanical ventilation duct that extracts from different household units, and may contain air, moisture and contaminant.

Common ramp A ramp which is used, or intended to be used by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a service ramp or accessible ramp.

Common stairway A stairway which is used, or intended to be used, by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a private stairway, service stairway or accessible stairway.

Compliance document has the meaning given to it by section 22 of the Building Act 2004.

Section 22 states:

(1) The chief executive may, by notice in the Gazette, issue a document for use in establishing compliance with the Building Code (a Compliance Document).
(2) A person who complies with a Compliance Document must, for the purposes of this Act, be treated as having complied with the provisions of the Building Code to which the document relates.
(3) Subsection (2) is subject to any regulations referred to in section 20”.

Compliance schedule means a compliance schedule required under section 100 of the Building Act 2004.

Compliance schedule statement means a statement issued by a territorial or regional authority referred to in section 105(e) of the Building Act 2004.

Concealed space Any part of the space within a building that cannot be seen from an occupied space.

COMMENT:
This term includes any ceiling space, roof space, space under a raised floor (such as computer rooms, floors, or stages), plenums, spaces under a tiered floor, “left-over spaces” created when some structural element or the like has been covered in; small service or duct spaces within the volume of a firecell and the like, but not a protected shaft.

Concrete slab shrinkage control joint A line along which the horizontal strength of the slab is deliberately reduced so that any shrinkage in the slab will result in a crack forming along that line.
**Definitions**

**Constant pressure** means subjected to the sustained force of fluid forming the reservoir. When there is no water in a reservoir, there is no pressure. When a reservoir is partially filled, there is a constant pressure – in terms of it being a pressure sustained in time.

**Construct** in relation to a building, includes to design, build, erect, prefabricate, and relocate the building.

**Contaminant** includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and microorganisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat.

(a) When discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water, or

(b) When discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.

**Controlled area** That area where the use of radioactive material or an irradiating apparatus may, in the opinion of the licensee, present a hazard to persons within that area.

**Control joint** A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also Expansion joint.

**Cross connection** Any actual or potential connection between a potable water supply and a source of contamination.

**D**

**D** A deformed reinforcing bar of the stated diameter in millimetres.

**Dam**

(a) means an artificial barrier, and its appurtenant structures, that—

(i) is constructed to hold back water or other fluid under constant pressure so as to form a reservoir; and

(ii) is used for the storage, control, or diversion of water or other fluid; and

(iii) retains 3 or more metres depth, and holds 20,000 or more cubic metres volume, of water or other fluid; and

(b) includes—

(i) a flood control dam; and

(ii) a natural feature that has been significantly modified to function as a dam; and

(iii) a canal; but

(c) does not include a stopbank designed to control floodwaters.

**COMMENT:**

20,000 cubic metres is equivalent to six Olympic size swimming pools. Note: An Olympic swimming pool size is 50 m long x 25 m wide x 2 m deep.
Definition

**Dam safety assurance programme** means a *dam safety assurance programme* prepared by an owner of a *dam* under section 140 of the  *Building Act 2004*.

**COMMENT:**
In order for *dams* to maintain their integrity ongoing monitoring, maintenance and repair is essential. For those *dams* classified as medium or high potential impact, *dam owners* have to prepare and submit a safety assurance programme to the *regional authority* on an annual basis.

**Dam compliance certificate** A certificate issued by the owner of a *dam* annually stating that all procedures in the *dam safety assurance programme* have been fully complied with during the previous 12 months.

**Damp-proof course (DPC)** A narrow strip (generally up to 300 mm wide) of *durable vapour barrier* placed between *building elements* to prevent the passage of moisture from one element to another.

**Damp-proof course (DPC)** A narrow strip (generally up to 300 mm wide) of *durable vapour barrier* greater than 90MN s/g to ASTM E96 and placed between *building elements* to prevent the passage of moisture from one element to another.

**Damp-proof membrane (DPM)** A sheet material, coating or *vapour barrier*, having a low water vapour transmission, and used to prevent water and water vapour movement through concrete in contact with the ground. (Also known as a concrete underlay.)

**Dangerous goods** Any materials included in the UN classification, classes 2-5.

**COMMENT:**
See *Hazardous substance*.

**Dangerous goods workroom** A room reserved primarily for the use of *dangerous goods* of Class 3(a) or Class 3(b) (i.e. flammable liquids).

**Dead end** That part of an *open path* where escape is possible in only one direction.

**COMMENT:**
A *dead end* ceases to exist where the *escape route* reaches a point in the *open path* which offers alternative directions of travel, or at a *final exit* or an *exitway*.

**Deck** An open platform projecting from an exterior wall of a *building and supported by framing*. A *deck* may be over enclosed internal spaces, or may be open underneath.

Refer also *Enclosed deck*. Also known as a balcony.

Source

- BA04
- DG
- CD-E2
- Simple House
- CD-B2, CD-E2
- CD-F8
- CD-F8
- CD-C
- CD-E2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Department</strong> means the Department of Building and Housing.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Department of Conservation</strong> means the department of State established by section 5 of the Conservation Act 1987.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Determination</strong> means a determination made by the Chief Executive under subpart 1 of Part 3 of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Developed length</strong> The total length along the centre line of a pipe including fittings and bends.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diagonal brace</strong> A member of a framed building fixed diagonally and used to resist tension or compression or both.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diameter (or bore)</strong> The nominal internal diameter.</td>
<td>CD-G12, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Direct fixed</strong> A term used to describe a wall cladding attached directly to the wall framing, without the use of a drained cavity.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Director-General</strong> has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Conservation Act 1987.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge pipe</strong> Any pipe that is intended to convey discharge from sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge stack</strong> A discharge pipe that has one or more discharge pipe connections, and which is vented at one end via a discharge stack vent.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge stack vent</strong> A vent pipe connected to the top of the discharge stack.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge unit</strong> The unit of measure for the discharge (hydraulic load) in the plumbing system, and is based on the rate, duration and frequency of discharge from a sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Doorset</strong> A complete assembly comprising a door leaf or leaves including any glazed or solid panels adjacent to or over the leaves within the door frame including hardware or other inbuilt features; and a door frame, if any, with its fixings to the wall and, for a sliding or tilting door, all guides and their respective fixings to the lintel, wall or sill.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dormer or dormer window</strong> A framed structure that projects from a sloping roof, and has a window at its outer end.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drain</strong> A pipe normally laid below ground level including fittings and equipment and intended to convey foul water or surface water to an outfall.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drained cavity</strong> A cavity space, immediately behind a wall cladding, that has vents at the base of the wall. Also known as a drained and vented cavity and referred to in E2/AS1 as a cavity or drained cavity.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A drained cavity assists drying by allowing water which occasionally penetrates the wall cladding system to drain to the exterior of the building, and any remaining moisture to dry by evaporation. Where E2/AS1 requires a nominal 20 mm drained cavity, the depth shall be between limits of 18 mm and 25 mm. For definition of masonry veneer cavity refer to SNZ HB 4236.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drain vent pipe</strong> Any pipe which is intended to permit the movement of air into and out of the drain and sewer.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Definition</strong></td>
<td><strong>Source</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Draught diverter</strong> A device, without moving parts, fitted in the flue of an appliance for isolating the combustion system from the effects of pressure changes in the secondary flue.</td>
<td>CD-G4, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drip edge</strong> Fold(s) applied to the edge of a horizontal metal flashing to deflect moisture away from the cladding system below. Refer also Bird's beak and Kick-out.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Durable</strong> Resistant to wear and decay.</td>
<td>CD-B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dwang</strong> A short (usually horizontal) member fixed between vertical framing timbers. Also known as nogging.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**E**

| **Early childhood centre** A facility used for the education or care of children under the age of six, and required to be licensed under the Education (Early Childhood Centres) Regulations 1998. | CD-C |
| **Eaves** That part of the roof construction, including cladding, fascia and eaves gutter (spouting), that extends beyond the exterior face of the wall. | CD-E2 |
| **Eaves bearer** or soffit bearer or sprocket A horizontal member attached to the end of a truss or a rafter and to a stud, or a ribbon board, or a soffit plate, and to which the eaves lining is attached. | Simple House |
| **EPDM** Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer – a thermosetting synthetic rubber. See butyl rubber. | Simple House |
| **EIFS (Exterior Insulation and Finish System)** A polystyrene sheet-based cladding system that uses mesh reinforced polymer-modified cement-based or polymer-based plaster base coats and a protective top coating. | CD-E2 |
| **Electrical fixed appliance** An electrical appliance which is fixed-wired to the electrical installation, or intended to remain permanently attached and form part of the building. | Code |
| **Electrical installation** Any electrical fixed appliances and components used in the reticulation of electricity, which are intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of the building. | Code |
| **Electrical supply system** The source of electricity external to the electrical installation. | Code |
| **Electrolytic corrosion** Galvanic corrosion commonly resulting from the contact of two dissimilar metals when an electrolyte such as water is present. | CD-E2 |
| **Enclosed balustrade** A timber-framed barrier with cladding across all exposed faces. Refer also Parapet. | CD-E2 |
| **Enclosed deck** A deck, whether over an interior or exterior space, that has an impermeable upper surface and is closed on the underside. May also be known as a balcony. | CD-E2 |
| **Energy work** means— (a) gasfitting; or (b) prescribed electrical work | BA04 |
**Definitions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Energy work certificate means a certificate of the kind referred to in section 19(1)(e) of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Envelope complexity The categorisation of the complexity of the total building envelope into one of four classes, depending on the particular features of the building as specified in E2/AS1.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPDM (Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer) A thermosetting synthetic rubber used as a resilient part of a sealing washer, or as a roof membrane.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equivalent aerodynamic area The area of an equivalent aerodynamically perfect orifice, and equals the penetration area required by the natural ventilation device multiplied by the discharge coefficient determined under test.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escape height The height between the floor level in the firecell being considered and the floor level of the required final exit which is the greatest vertical distance above or below that firecell.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F3, CD-F6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMMENT:**
1. It is necessary only to use the greatest height to the exits required for the firecell being considered, even though the building may have other final exits at lower or higher levels.
2. Where the firecell contains intermediate floors, or upper floors within household units the escape height shall be measured from the floor having the greatest vertical separation from the final exit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Escape route A continuous unobstructed route from any occupied space in a building to a final exit to enable occupants to reach a safe place, and shall comprise one or more of the following: open paths, protected paths and safe paths.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMMENT:**
Doors are not obstructions in an escape route provided they comply with C/AS1 Part 3 and D1/AS1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Essential service In the context of an electrical installation means emergency lighting, firemen’s lifts, alarms, water pumps, sprinklers, detectors, ventilation systems and public address systems necessary for the safety of people in buildings.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated value in relation to building work, means the estimated aggregate of the values, determined in accordance with section 10 of the Goods and Services Tax Act 1985, of all goods and services to be supplied for the building work.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evacuation time The time taken by the occupants of the building to evacuate the building to a final exit.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exitway All parts of an escape route protected by fire or smoke separations, or by distance when exposed to open air, and terminating at a final exit.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expansion joint A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also Control joint.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

**External wall** | Any exterior face of a **building** within 30° of vertical, consisting of primary and/or secondary elements intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment, but which may also contain unprotected areas. | Code
---|---|---
**COMMENT:** |
A roof is an external wall if within 30° of the vertical. | Simple House

**External wall** | An outer wall of a **building**. | CD-E2

**External wall** | Any vertical exterior face of a **building** consisting of primary and/or secondary elements intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment. | CD-E2

| Source |
---|---|

**Factor of safety** | in relation to any **building** means the ratio of resisting forces to applied forces for a given loading condition. It is generally expressed to two significant figures. | CD-B1

**Falsework**, in relation to **building work** or the maintenance of a **building**,— |
(a) means any temporary structure or framework used to support materials, equipment, or an assembly; and |
(b) includes steel tubes, adjustable steel props, proprietary frames, or other means used to support a permanent structure until it becomes self-supporting; but |
(c) does not include scaffolding or cranes used for support. | BA04

**Final exit** | The point at which an escape route terminates by giving direct access to a safe place. | Code

**COMMENT:** |
Final exits are commonly the external doors from a ground floor, but this applies only if such doors open directly onto a safe place. If a safe place can be reached only by passing down an alley, or across a bridge, then the final exit is not reached until the end of such an alley or bridge. Final exits, therefore, should be seen strictly as a point of arrival, rather than as any particular element of a building. They are determined entirely by the definition of safe place. | Code

**Finished ground level (FGL)** | The level of the ground against any part of a **building** after all backfilling and/or landscaping and/or surface paving has been completed. | CD-E2

**Fire** | The state of combustion during which flammable materials burn producing heat, toxic gases, or smoke or flame or any combination of these. | Code

**Firecell** | Any space including a group of contiguous spaces on the same or different levels within a **building**, which is enclosed by any combination of fire separations, external walls, roofs, and floors. | Code

**COMMENT:** |
Floors, in this context, includes ground floors and those in which the underside is exposed to the external environment (eg. when cantilevered). Note also that internal floors between firecells are fire separations. | Code

**Firecell rating (F)** | The fire resistance rating (FRR) intended to prevent fire spread to another firecell, for sufficient time to provide for safe evacuation of occupants and protection of adjacent housing units and sleeping areas in the building of fire origin and fire fighters engaged in fire fighting and rescue operations. | CD-C
Definitions

1. The purpose of the **firecell rating** is to prevent premature collapse of elements of structure in order to protect:
   - (a) The occupants, some of whom may have to remain in the building for some time while evacuation proceeds, particularly if the building is a large one.
   - (b) Adjacent household units and sleeping areas in the building of fire origin.
   - (c) Fire fighters engaged on rescue and fire fighting operations (although this is limited because property protection in the building of origin is not a matter covered by the New Zealand Building Code except as required by b) above).

2. The use of the **F rating** to determine the **FRR** of a primary or secondary element is discussed in C/AS1 Part 5.

**Fire damper** A device with a specified **FRR** complete with fixings and operating mechanism for automatically closing off an airway where it passes through a **fire separation**.

**Fire door** A doorset, single or multi-leaf, having a specific **fire resistance rating**, and in certain situations a smoke control capability, and forming part of a fire separation. The door, in the event of fire, if not already closed, will close automatically and be self latching.

**Fire hazard** means the danger of potential harm and degree of exposure arising from—
   - (a) the start and spread of fire; and
   - (b) the smoke and gases that are generated by the start and spread of fire.

**Fire hazard category (FHC)** The number (graded 1 to 4 in order of increasing severity), used to classify purpose groups or activities having a similar fire hazard, and where fully developed fires are likely to have similar impact on the structural stability of the building.

**Fire intensity** The rate release of calorific energy in watts, determined either theoretically or empirically, as applicable.

**Fire load** The sum of the net calorific values of the combustible contents which can reasonably be expected to burn within a firecell, including furnishings, built-in and removable materials, and building elements. The calorific values shall be determined at the ambient moisture content or humidity. (The unit of measurement is MJ.)

**Fire load energy density (FLED)** The total fire load divided by the firecell floor area. In this calculation the floor area shall include circulation and service spaces, but exclude exits and protected shafts.
Definitions

**Definition Source**

**COMMENT:**
The total *fire load* is converted to *fire load* energy terms in megajoules (MJ) for calculation of the *FLED* (MJ/m²).

**Fireplace** A space formed by the *chimney back*, the *chimney jambs*, and the *chimney breast* in which fuel is burned for the purpose of heating the room into which it opens.

**Fire resistance rating (FRR)** The term used to describe the minimum *fire* resistance required of *primary* and *secondary elements* as determined in the *standard test for fire* resistance, or in accordance with a specific calculation method verified by experimental data from standard *fire* resistance tests. It comprises three numbers giving the time in minutes for which each of the criteria *stability*, *integrity* and *insulation* are satisfied, and is presented always in that order.

**COMMENT:**
1. Examples of *FRRs* are:
   (a) 30/30/15 indicating *stability* 30 minutes, *integrity* 30 minutes, *insulation* 15 minutes.
   (b) 30/-/- indicating *stability* 30 minutes, but no time requirement for *integrity* or *insulation*.
   (c) -/15/15 indicating no time requirement for *stability*, but 15 minutes for *integrity* and *insulation*.
   (d) 60/30/x indicating *stability* of 60 minutes, *integrity* of 30 minutes, and a requirement for *insulation* from C/AS1 Paragraph 5.6.4.
2. C/AS1 Part 5 gives more information on *FRRs*.

**Fire resisting closure** A *fire* rated device or assembly for closing an opening through a *fire separation*. It shall have a *FRR* of no less than that required for the *fire separation*.

**COMMENT:**
A *fire resisting closure* is intended to include *fire doors*, *fire windows* or access panels. In this context the opening may be used to permit passage of people or goods, or to transmit light, but does not include an opening to permit the passage of *building services*.

**Fire resisting glazing** Fixed or openable glazing, complete with frame and fixings, mullions, transoms and glazing beads, with a specified *FRR* and complying with NZS 4232: Part 2.

**COMMENT:**
1. The requirement for *fire resisting glazing* will not be met by ordinary window glass, or safety glasses, but rather by wired glass, or by special *fire resisting glass* shown by test to perform adequately. The nature and design of the frames also have an effect on the performance of *fire resisting glazing*.
2. Openable glazing is required by NZS 4232 Part 2 to be fitted with an automatic device which, in the event of *fire*, will close and latch the window sash.

**Fire safety precautions (FSPs)** The combination of all methods used in a *building* to warn people of an emergency, provide for safe evacuation, and restrict the spread of *fire*, and includes both active and passive protection.

**COMMENT:**
This definition has the same meaning and wording as the definition of “*fire safety systems*” in the Building Regulations.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>Source</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fire safety systems The combination of all methods used in a building to warn people of an emergency, provide for safe evacuation, and restrict the spread of fire, and includes both active and passive protection.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire separation Any building element which separates firecells or firecells and safe paths, and provides a specific fire resistance rating.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire shutter A fire rated device, complete with fixings and operating mechanism, for automatically closing off an opening in a fire separation or protected shaft.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire stop A material or method of construction used to restrict the spread of fire within or through fire separations, and having a FRR no less than that of the fire separation.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Fire stops are mainly used to seal around penetrations, but can also be used to seal narrow gaps between building elements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixture An article intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of a building.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixture discharge pipe A discharge pipe that is used to convey waste from a single sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance to a branch discharge pipe, a discharge stack, or directly to a drain. It does not include any pipes forming part of a sanitary appliance.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixture vent pipe (trap vent) A vent pipe that is connected to a fixture discharge pipe or the sanitary fixture itself.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flame barrier A material or system applied or installed to protect another building element from flame contact. The protection shall be effective for no less than 10 minutes exposure in the standard test for fire resistance.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **COMMENT:** 1. The principal use of flame barriers is to delay ignition of foamed plastics materials.  
2. Refer to Appendix C Paragraph C10.1 of C/AS1 for details of the test requirements for flame barriers. |            |
| Flame safeguard system A system consisting of a flame detector(s) plus associated circuitry, integral components, valves and interlocks the function of which is to shut off the fuel supply to the burner(s) in the event of ignition failure or flame failure. | CD-G11     |
| Flammability index (F1) That index number for flammability, which is determined according to the standard test method for flammability of thin flexible materials. | CD-C       |
| Flashing A component, formed from a rigid or flexible waterproof material, that drains or deflects water back outside the cladding system. | CD-E2      |
| Flexible flashing tape A flexible self-adhesive waterproof tape. Usually used as an accessory for wall underlays, to seal corners and intersections. | CD-E2      |
**Definition**

**Flexible flashing tape** A flexible self-adhesive waterproof tape. Usually used as an accessory for wall underlays to seal corners and intersections  
*Source: Simple House*

**Flood level rim** The top edge at which water can overflow from equipment or a fixture.  
*Source: CD-G12*

**Floor area**, in relation to a building, means the floor area (expressed in square metres) of all interior spaces used for activities normally associated with domestic living.  
*Source: Code*

**Floor waste** An outlet located at the low point of a graded floor or in a level floor designed to receive accidental or intentional discharges.  
*Source: CD-E3, CD-G13*

**Floor waste gully** A disconnector gully for installation inside a building, for use with a floor grating or waste outlet fitting on a riser pipe and with provision, where required, for connection of waste pipes for sanitary fixtures.  
*Source: Simple House*

**Floor waste pipe** A pipe that receives the discharge from a floor waste and that discharges outside the building or to the foul water drainage or sanitary plumbing system.  
*Source: CD-G13*

**Flue** The passage through which the products of combustion are conveyed to the outside.  
*Source: CD-B1, CD-B2, CD-C, CD-G4, CD-G11*

**Flue liner** Pipes or linings of fire clay, metal or fire brick, surrounding flues.  
*Source: CD-C*

**Flue system** A series of interconnecting flue pipe casings which form a safe passage (flue) for conveying products of combustion from within an appliance to the outside of a building or structure.  
*Source: CD-C*

**Flush-finished** The description of a cladding and joints system which relies on a protective coating applied to the face of the cladding to prevent the penetration of water.  
*Source: CD-E2*

**Foamed plastics** Combustible foamed plastic polymeric materials of low density (typically less than 100 kg/m³) and are classified as cellular polymers which are manufactured by creating a multitude of fine voids (typically 90 to 98%) distributed more or less uniformly throughout the product. Examples of foamed plastics are latex foams, polyethylene foams, polyvinyl chloride foams, expanded or extruded polystyrene foams, phenolic foams, ureaformaldehyde foams, polyurethane foams and polychloropene foams.  
*Source: CD-C*

**COMMENT:**

1. *Foamed plastics* may be rigid or flexible, but rigid foams are the most common in building products. When burnt they tend to generate high levels of heat energy (kJ/kg) and varying quantities of smoke and other toxic gases depending on the nature and volume of the particular product.

2. Where doubt exists as to whether a building material is foamed plastics, an opinion should be sought from a person or organisation with appropriate skill and experience in fire engineering. That opinion should be included with the building consent application to the building consent authority.

**Footing** That portion of a foundation bearing on the ground and any adjoining portion that is reinforced so as to resist the bearing forces.  
*Source: Simple House*
Definitions

**Definition**

| **Forced or induced draught appliance** | An appliance where all or part of the air for combustion is provided by a fan or other mechanical device which is an integral part of the combustion system. | CD-G4 |
| **Former Act** | means the Building Act 1991. | BA04 |
| **Foul water** | The discharge from any sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance. | Code |
| **Foul water drainage system** | Drains, joints and fittings normally laid underground and used specifically for the conveyance of water from the plumbing system to an outfall. | Code |
| **Foundation** | Those parts of a building transmitting and distributing loads to the ground through a footing. | Simple House |
| **Framing** | Timber members to which lining, cladding, flooring, or decking is attached; or which are depended upon for supporting the structure, or for resisting forces applied to it. | CD-E2 |
| **Free outlet (push through)** | In the context of storage water heaters means a water heater with a tap on the cold water inlet so designed that the hot water is discharged through an open outlet. | CD-G12 |
| **Functional requirements** | in relation to a building, means those functions which a building is to perform for the purposes of the Building Act 2004. | BA04 |

**G**

| **Gable** | Triangular part of an external wall between the planes of the roof and the line of the eaves. | Simple House |
| **Galvanised steel flashings** | Galvanised steel flashings shall be: | Simple House |
| (a) | BMT of 0.55 mm minimum for flashings generally | |
| (b) | BMT of 0.4 mm minimum for roll-formed roll-top ridge flashings | |
| (c) | Hot-dipped zinc coated Z275 with a factory-applied finish that complies with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in Sea Spray and corrosion Zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum. | |
| **Gantry** | A structure covering a public way providing protection from both the side and overhead. | CD-F5 |
| **Gasfitting** | has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976. | BA04/PGDA |

Section 2 states:

“(a) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) beyond the outlet of any gas measurement system supplying a consumer or gas refueller with gas (or, where there is no such gas measurement system, beyond the custody transfer point of the place at which gas is supplied to a consumer or gas refueller):

(b) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) that convey gas from any gas storage container in the possession or control of a consumer or gas refueller, and—
(i) In the case of liquefied petroleum gas, that are downstream of the first regulator beyond that container; or
(ii) In the case of any other gas or where there is no such regulator (in the case of liquefied petroleum gas), that are downstream of the outlet valve of the container:
(c) The work of fixing or unfixing the whole or part of the control system of any gas appliance—
   but does not include—
(d) Work on any gas storage container, including its fixing or unfixing; or
(e) Work on any gas transmission system or distribution system; or
(f) Work on any pipes or fittings supplied with liquefied petroleum gas from any gas storage container or containers that contains, or together contain, less than 15 kilograms net weight of liquefied petroleum gas; or
(g) Work in any circumstances where the exclusions in section 3(2) of the Gas Act 1992 apply:

Gather That part of a chimney where the transition from fireplace to stack occurs.

Good ground means any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding an ultimate bearing pressure of 300 kPa (i.e. an allowable bearing pressure of 100 kPa using a factor of safety of 3.0), but excludes:
(a) Potentially compressible ground such as topsoil, soft soils such as clay which can be moulded easily in the fingers, and uncompacted loose gravel which contains obvious voids,
(b) Expansive soils being those that have a liquid limit of more than 50% when tested in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.2, and a linear shrinkage of more than 15% when tested, from the liquid limit, in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.6, and
(c) Any ground which could forseeably experience movement of 25 mm or greater for any reason including one or a combination of: land instability, ground creep, subsidence, liquefaction, lateral spread – for the Canterbury earthquake region only), seasonal swelling and shrinking, frost heave, changing ground water level, erosion, dissolution of soil in water, and effects of tree roots.

COMMENT:
Soils (excepting those described in (a), (b) and (c) above) tested with a dynamic cone penetrometer in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 6.5.2, shall be acceptable as good ground for building foundations if penetration resistance is no less than:
(a) 3 blows per 75 mm at depths no greater than the footing width.
(b) 2 blows per 75 mm at depths greater than the footing width.
Depths shall be measured from the underside of the proposed footing.
### Definitions

**Good ground** Any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding an ultimate bearing pressure of 300 kPa (i.e., an allowable bearing pressure of 100 kPa using a factor of safety of 3.0) but excluding:

(a) potentially compressible ground such as top soil, soft soils such as clay which can be moulded easily in the fingers, and uncompacted loose gravel which contains obvious voids;

(b) expansive soils being those that have a liquid limit of more than 50% when tested in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.2, and a linear shrinkage of more than 15% when tested from the liquid limit in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.6, and

(c) any ground which could foreseeably experience movement of 25 mm or greater for any reason including one or a combination of: land instability, ground creep, subsidence, seasonal swelling and shrinkage, frost heave, changing ground water level, erosion, dissolusion of soil in water, and effects of tree roots.

(Note that soils, excepting those described in (a), (b) and (c) above, tested with a dynamic cone penetrometer in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 6.5.2, shall be acceptable as good ground for building foundations if penetration resistance is no less than:

(i) 3 blows per 75 mm at depths no greater than the footing width

(ii) 2 blows per 75 mm at depths greater than the footing width. Depths shall be measured from the underside of the proposed footing.)

**Grease trap** A device designed to intercept grease in a foul water discharge.

**Gross floor area** The area contained within the outside face of the exterior timber wall framing of a simple house.

**Ground level** See cleared ground level, finished ground level.

**Group sleeping area** A firecell containing communal sleeping accommodation for a specified number of people who may or may not be known to one another. Partial subdivision within the firecell is permitted with specific limitation including that no occupied space is fully enclosed and all occupied spaces are open and available to all occupants at any time. A group sleeping area firecell may include spaces for associated direct support functions, such as hygiene facilities and tea making (not cooking) activities, for use by the occupants. It does not include spaces, such as waiting rooms, lounges, dining rooms or kitchens, providing a communal service function for all occupants.

**COMMENT:**

1. Examples of group sleeping area firecells are dormitories, hospital wards, wharenui, backpacker hostels and ski lodges.

2. The maximum number of people permitted in a group sleeping area firecell, and the permitted form of subdivision, will depend on the ability of the occupants to react to the presence of fire and escape to a safe place.

**Gully trap** A fitting designed to prevent foul air escaping from the drainage system and used to receive the discharge from waste pipes.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>Source</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>H</strong></td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Habitable space</strong> A space used for activities normally associated with domestic living, but excludes any bathroom, laundry, water closet, pantry, walk-in wardrobe, corridor, hallway, lobby, clothes-drying room, or other space of a specialised nature occupied neither frequently nor for extended periods.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Handrail</strong> A rail to provide support to, or assist with the movement of a person.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hazardous</strong> Creating an unreasonable risk to people of bodily injury or deterioration of health.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hazardous substance</strong> Has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Fire Service Act 1975 and section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996</td>
<td>Code/FSA/ HSNOA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 2 of the Fire Service Act 1975 states:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;<strong>Hazardous substance</strong>&quot; means</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Any hazardous substance as defined in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Any infectious or radioactive substance that may impair human, animal, or plant” health:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 states:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;<strong>Hazardous substance</strong>&quot; means, unless expressly provided otherwise by regulations, any substance—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) With one or more of the following intrinsic properties:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Explosiveness:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Flammability:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) A capacity to oxidise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) Corrosiveness:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) Toxicity (including chronic toxicity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vi) Ecotoxicity, with or without bioaccumulation; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Which on contact with air or water (other than air or water where the temperature or pressure has been artificially increased or decreased) generates a substance with any one or more of the properties specified in paragraph (a) of this definition.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hearth</strong> The insulating floor under the fire and in front and at the sides of the fireplace.</td>
<td>CD-B1. CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heating degrees</strong>, in relation to a location and a heating month, means the degrees obtained by subtracting from a base temperature of 14°C the mean (calculated using the approved temperature data) of the outdoor temperatures at that location during that month.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heating degrees total</strong>, in relation to a location and a year, means whichever is the greater of the following:</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) the value of 12 and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the sum of all the heating degrees (calculated using the approved temperature data) for all of the heating months of the year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

#### Heating energy
In relation to a building, means the energy from a network utility operator or a depletable resource (expressed in kilowatt-hours, and calculated using the Building Research Association of New Zealand’s ALF 3, *The ‘Annual Loss Factor’ Method, A design tool for energy efficient houses* (3rd edition, April 2000) or some other method that can be correlated with that manual) needed to maintain the building at all times within a year at a constant internal temperature under the following standard conditions:

- (a) a continuous temperature of 20°C throughout the building
- (b) an air change rate of 1 change per hour or the actual air leakage rate, whichever is the greater
- (c) a heat emission contribution arising from internal heat sources for any period in the year of 1000 kilowatt-hours for the first 50 m² of floor area, and 10 kilowatt-hours for every additional square metre of floor area
- (d) no allowance for—
  - (i) carpets or
  - (ii) blinds, curtains, or drapes, on windows
- (e) windows to have a shading coefficient of 0.6 (made up of 0.8 for windows and recesses and 0.75 for site shading).

#### Heating month
In relation to a location, means a month in which a base temperature of 14°C is greater than the mean (calculated using the approved temperature data) of the outdoor temperatures at that location during that month.

#### Hem
A flat fold, not completely closed, applied to the edge of a metal flashing.

#### Hidden gutter
A gutter located within the boundaries of the roof framing. *Hidden gutters* may also be known as secret gutters or internal gutters. See also *Valley gutters*.

**COMMENT:**
*Hidden gutters* are distinct from gutters or spouting that are externally located beyond the bounds of the roof and wall framing.

#### Hoarding
A structure alongside a public way providing side protection but no overhead protection.

#### Hold-open device
A device which holds a smoke control door or fire door open during normal use, but is released by deactivating the device by an automatic fire detection system, allowing the door to close automatically under the action of a self-closing device.

#### Hook
An open fold applied to the edge of a metal flashing.

**COMMENT:**
A hook is distinct from a hem, as it is open at an acute angle rather than flattened.

---

**Source:** Code
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>Source</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Household unit</strong></td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| (a) means a **building** or group of **buildings**, or part of a **building** or group of **buildings**, that is—  
(i) used, or intended to be used, only or mainly for residential purposes; and  
(ii) occupied, or intended to be occupied, exclusively as the home or residence of not more than 1 household; but  
(b) does not include a hostel, boarding house, or other specialised accommodation.  
**Household unit** For a **simple house**, means a **building** or part of a **building** that is used or intended to be used for residential purposes.  
**HVAC** An abbreviation for heating, ventilating and airconditioning.  
**HVAC system** for the purposes of performance **H1.3.6** and in relation to a **Code building**, means a mechanical, electrical, or other system for modifying air temperature, modifying air humidity, providing ventilation, or doing all or any of those things, in a space within the building.  
**Illuminance** The luminous flux falling onto a unit area of surface.  
**Impact insulation class (IIC)** A single number rating derived from measured values of normalized impact sound pressure levels in accordance with Method ASTM E 492, Annex A1, Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission Through Floor-Ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine. It provides an estimate of the impact sound insulating performance of a floor-ceiling assembly.  
**Impervious** That which does not allow the passage of moisture.  
**Independent qualified person (IQP)** means a **person** accepted by a **territorial authority** in accordance with section 438 of the Building Act 2004 as being qualified to carry out the inspection, maintenance, and reporting procedures required for a **specified system** stated in a **compliance schedule**.  
**Inspection chamber** A chamber with working space at ground level through which the **drain** passes either as an open channel or as a pipe incorporating an **inspection point**.  
**Inspection point** A removable cap at **drain** level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.  
**Insulating material** A material that has a thermal conductivity of less than 0.07 W/mK.  
**Insulation** In the context of **fire** protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a **fire separation**, when subjected to the **standard test** for fire resistance, has limited the transmission of heat through the specimen. |
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Integrity</strong> in the context of fire protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a fire separation, when subjected to the standard test for fire resistance, has prevented the passage of flame or hot gases.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> The precise meaning of integrity depends on the type of building elements being treated and how it is defined in the standard test being used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intended use</strong> in relation to a building,—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) includes any or all of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) any reasonably foreseeable occasional use that is not incompatible with the intended use:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) normal maintenance:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) activities undertaken in response to fire or any other reasonably foreseeable emergency; but</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) does not include any other maintenance and repairs or rebuilding.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interceptor trap</strong> A device which will separate and retain desired liquids and solids from a liquid stream and which will provide a water barrier to prevent foul air or gas from entering any downstream system.</td>
<td>CD-G14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intermediate floor</strong> Any upper floor within a firecell and which is not fire separated from the floor below. Upper floors within household units need not meet the specific fire safety requirements which apply to intermediate floors in all other situations.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> 1. An intermediate floor may be open to the firecell or enclosed with non-fire rated construction. If enclosed with fire rated walls another firecell is created. 2. Household units occur only in purpose groups SR and SH. Life safety provisions are governed by the limitations in permitted open path lengths.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internal wall</strong> A wall other than an external wall.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>K</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kerb ramp</strong> means a short ramp either cutting through a kerb or built up to the kerb.</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kick-out</strong> A single fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal flashing to deflect moisture away from the cladding system below. Refer also Bird’s beak.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> A kick-out is used at the bottom of a capping or other flashing to deflect water away from the cladding below.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>L</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lead flashings</strong> Lead sheet flashings that:</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) comply with AS 1804, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) have a minimum unit mass of 17 kg/m².</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Licensee</strong> A person holding a licence issued</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under the Radiation Protection Act 1965 and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the time being in force.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Licensed building practitioner</strong> means a</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building practitioner whose name is, for the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time being, entered in the register established</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and maintained under section 298(1) of the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lightweight wall cladding</strong> Timber weather-</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board (bevel-back or rusticated) or flat sheet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(plywood or fibre-cement) wall claddings for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Limited area atrium</strong> A single firecell in</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which individual occupied spaces at different</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levels open onto a common enclosed space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limitations are placed on the number of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intermediate floors (no more than two levels),</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>individual floor areas and permitted occupant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load, depending on the provisions for smoke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detection, smoke control and the means of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escape from fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Typical limited area atrium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buildings are small shopping malls, and motel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complexes with a central atrium feature open</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to a number of floors.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lining</strong> The rigid sheet covering for a wall,</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceiling or other interior surface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lintel</strong> A horizontal framing member spanning</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an opening in a wall.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loadbearing stud</strong> A stud in a loadbearing</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wall.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loadbearing wall</strong> A wall supporting vertical</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loading from a roof.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loaded dimension</strong> The loaded dimension of</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>structural elements which support other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>members at right angles. Refer to [SH/AS1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 5.2.2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lock-out</strong> The safety shut down condition of</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-G11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the control system such that re-start cannot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be accomplished without manual resetting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong> A steel bolt of the stated diameter in</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>millimetres.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main private stairway</strong> A private stairway</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intended to provide access to and between</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frequently used spaces such as living areas,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchens and garages, and includes all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterior private stairways.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masonry tiles</strong> Clay or concrete tile roof</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cladding.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masonry veneer</strong> Clay or concrete block</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veneer cladding.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Definitions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Means of escape from fire</strong></td>
<td><strong>BA04</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in relation to a building that has a floor area,—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) means continuous unobstructed routes of travel from any part of the floor area of that building to a place of safety, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) includes all active and passive protection features required to warn people of fire and to assist in protecting people from the effects of fire in the course of their escape from the fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Member span</strong></td>
<td><strong>Simple House</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The clear distance between supports, measured along the member.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Membrane</strong></td>
<td><strong>CD-E2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A non-metallic material, usually synthetic, used as a fully supported roof cladding, deck surface or, in conjunction with other claddings, as gutters or flashings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minister</strong></td>
<td><strong>BA04</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of a warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minor private stairway</strong></td>
<td><strong>CD-D1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A private stairway not on a main thoroughfare, and intended to provide infrequent access to a single room which is not a living area or kitchen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MSG</strong></td>
<td><strong>Simple House</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine stress graded refers to timber that is initially sorted by machine, calibrated to NZS 3603. See also VSG.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multi-unit dwelling</strong></td>
<td><strong>CD-C</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a building or use which contains more than one separate household or family.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> For fire safety purposes each household unit is a separate firecell.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**N**

**Natural draught** The flow produced by the tendency of warmed gases to rise. | **CD-G4** |

**Natural hazard** has the meaning given to it by section 71 of the Building Act 2004. | **BA04** |

Section 71(3) states:

“(3) In this section and sections 72 to 74, natural hazard means any of the following:

(a) erosion (including coastal erosion, bank erosion, and sheet erosion):
(b) falling debris (including soil, rock, snow, and ice):
(c) subsidence:
(d) inundation (including flooding, overland flow, storm surge, tidal effects, and ponding):
(e) slippage.”

**Net openable area** is the area of windows or doors or other opening measured on the face dimensions of the openable building element concerned. | **CD-G4**
**Definition**

**Network utility operator** means a person who—

(a) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution or transmission by pipeline of natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel, or geothermal energy; or

(b) operates or proposes to operate a network for the purpose of—
   (i) telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001; or
   (ii) radiocommunications as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989; or

(c) is an electricity operator or electricity distributor as defined in section 2 of the Electricity Act 1992 for the purpose of line function services as defined in that section; or

(d) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution of water for supply (including irrigation); or

(e) undertakes or proposes to undertake a drainage or sewerage system

**Nogging** See *dwang*

**Nominal pile width** The least width of a pile in side view and is equal to the diameter in round piles.

**Non-combustible** Materials shall be classified as non-combustible or combustible when tested to: AS 1530 – Part 1.

**Non-loadbearing stud** A stud in a non-loadbearing wall.

**Non-loadbearing wall** A wall other than a loadbearing wall.

**Non-return valve** A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a hot or cold water system.

**Nosing** The rounded projecting edge of a stair tread.

**Notice to fix** has the meaning given to it by section 164(2) of the Building Act 2004.

Section 164(2) states:

“(2) A responsible authority must issue to the specified person concerned a notice (a notice to fix) requiring the person—
   (a) to remedy the contravention of, or to comply with, this Act or the regulations; or
   (b) to correct the warrant of fitness; or
   (c) to properly comply with the inspection, maintenance, or reporting procedures stated in the compliance schedule.”

**Notional boundary** The boundary which for fire safety purposes, is assumed to exist between two buildings on the same property under a single land title.

**COMMENT:**

A notional boundary may be located anywhere between the two buildings on the same property. It is not fixed and for the purposes of calculating permitted unprotected areas of each building it can be moved towards the other building thus maximising the permitted unprotected area.

**NUO system** means a system owned or controlled by a network utility operator.

**NZBC** New Zealand Building Code.
Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occupant load</strong> The greatest number of people likely to occupy a particular space within a building. It is determined by:</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F6, CD-F7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Multiplying the number of people per m² (occupant density) for the activity being undertaken, by the total floor area, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) For sleeping areas, counting the number of beds, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) For fixed seating areas, counting the number of seats.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occupied space</strong> Any space within a building in which a person will be present from time to time during the intended use of the building.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Open path</strong> That part of an escape route (including dead ends) not protected by fire or smoke separations, and which terminates at a final exit or exitway.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Open space</strong> includes land on which there is and will be no buildings and which has no roof over any part of it other than overhanging eaves.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Open vented storage water heater</strong> A water heater incorporating a vent pipe which is permanently open to the atmosphere.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other property</strong>— (a) means any land or buildings, or part of any land or buildings, that are—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) not held under the same allotment; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) not held under the same ownership; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) includes a road</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outdoor air</strong> Air as typically comprising by volume:</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) oxygen 20.94%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) carbon dioxide 0.03%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) nitrogen and other inert gases 79.03%.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outfall</strong> That part of the disposal system receiving surface water or foul water from the drainage system. For foul water, the outfall may include a sewer or a septic tank. For surface water, the outfall may include a natural water course, kerb and channel, or soakage system.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Over-pressure protection</strong> Devices preventing the pressure in piping or appliances from exceeding a predetermined value.</td>
<td>CD-G11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Owner</strong>, in relation to land and any buildings on the land,—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) means the person who—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) is entitled to the rack rent from the land; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) would be so entitled if the land were let to a tenant at a rack rent; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) includes—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) the owner of the fee simple of the land; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) any person who has agreed in writing, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to purchase the land or any leasehold estate or interest in the land or to take a lease of the land and who is bound by the agreement because the agreement is still in force.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parallel flashing</strong> A roof flashing that runs along the roof slope, parallel to the roof cladding profile. Also known as a longitudinal flashing.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parapet</strong> A timber-framed wall that extends above the level of the roof cladding. Refer also Enclosed balustrade.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Passive stack ventilator</strong> A system including a ventilation shaft which uses natural draught to ventilate spaces.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penetration</strong> A pipe, cable or duct passing through an opening in a fire separation.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penstocks</strong> are conduits to control the flow of water in water supply, hydroelectric power and sewerage systems. Penstocks are normally equipped with a gate system and surge tank.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>People with disabilities</strong> People whose ability to use buildings is affected by mental, physical, hearing or sight impairment.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Performance criteria</strong> in relation to a building, means those qualitative or quantitative criteria that the building is required to satisfy in performing its functional requirement.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Permanent opening</strong> An opening which cannot be closed, this implies that doors, windows etc are NOT permanent openings, although door undercuts are.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Person includes**—  
(a) the Crown; and  
(b) a corporation sole; and  
(c) a body of persons (whether corporate or unincorporate) | BA04   |
| **Person with a disability** means a person who has an impairment or a combination of impairments that limits the extent to which the person can engage in the activities, pursuits, and processes of everyday life, including, without limitation, any of the following:  
(a) a physical, sensory, neurological, or intellectual impairment:  
(b) a mental illness. | BA04   |
| **Piping system** An assembly of pipes, pipe fittings, gaskets, bolting and pipe supports. | CD-G14 |
| **Pitch line** The line joining the leading edge or nosings (if any) of successive stair treads within a single flight of stairs. | CD-F4  |
| **Plans and specifications**—  
(a) means the drawings, specifications, and other documents according to which a building is proposed to be constructed, altered, demolished, or removed; and  
(b) includes the proposed procedures for inspection during the construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building; and  
(c) in the case of the construction or alteration of a building, also includes—  
(i) the intended use of the building; and  
(ii) the specified systems that the applicant for building consent considers will be required to be included in a compliance schedule required under section 100; and | BA04   |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(iii) the proposed procedures for inspection and routine maintenance for the purposes of the compliance schedule for those specified systems.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plate</strong> A timber member supported by a foundation or studs to support and distribute the load from floors, walls, roofs or ceilings. <strong>See bottom plate, top plate.</strong></td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plumbing system</strong> Pipes, joints and fittings laid above ground and used for the conveyance of foul water to the foul water drain, and includes vent pipes.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Post</strong> An isolated vertical member acting as a support.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Potable (and potable water)</strong> Water that is suitable for human consumption.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Potential impact classification</strong> is related to the consequence (effects) of the dam failing, if it should release its stored contents. Consequences include loss of life, socio-economic, financial and environmental.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prescribed electrical work</strong> has the meaning given to it by section 2(1) of the Electricity Act 1992.</td>
<td>BA04, EA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary element</strong> A building element providing the basic load bearing capacity to the structure, and which if affected by fire may initiate instability or premature structural collapse.</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Suspended floors in multi-storey buildings are primary elements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Principal user</strong> A member of the primary group for which a building was constructed, and therefore explicitly excludes persons or groups of persons providing care or control of that principal user group.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privacy</strong> The situation of being withdrawn from view.</td>
<td>CD-G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Private stairway</strong> A stairway used, or intended to be used, by the occupants of a single household unit.</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privy</strong> A private room containing a receptacle (other than a WC) or an excavation for excreted liquid or solid human waste, and with a means of disposal or containment of the waste.</td>
<td>CD-G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Producer statements</strong> are formal statements supplied by or on behalf of</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) an applicant for a building consent, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) by or on behalf of a person who has carried out building work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that can be accepted by a building consent authority as verification that certain work will be or has been carried out in accordance with nominated performance requirements of the Building Code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Although no longer expressly referred to in the Building Act 2004, these could be accepted and considered as part of the plans or specifications.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Product certificate</strong> means a certificate issued under section 269 of the Building Act 2004 that a building consent authority must accept as establishing compliance with the Building Code.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Product certification accreditation body</strong> means the person referred to in section 261(2) of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong> includes land, buildings, and goods; but does not include</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incorporeal forms of <strong>property</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proprietary fasteners</strong> Proprietary fasteners may be used where the</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixing capacity of fixings are specifically identified in this [SH/AS1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acceptable Solution</em>. Manufacturers of a timber connector or fixing shall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provide the following information on each package of fixings, or on a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>securely attached label:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) the name, or registered trade name, or make and address of manufacturer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the materials used in manufacture including fasteners and corrosion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protection.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) the load capacity of the timber connector or fixing in kN determined in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accordance with the following equation:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ R = \varphi \times Q_k \times n \times k ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R ) = connector capacity in kN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \varphi ) = capacity reduction factor from NZS 3603</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( Q_k ) = characteristic value obtained by test in accordance with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 or AS/NZS 2699: Part 2 as appropriate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( n ) = number of tested elements making up the complete joint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( k ) = modification factors from NZS 3603 (Section 4) as appropriate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to specific application.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) fastener’s requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) details of <strong>intended use</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) durability in accordance with Paragraph 2.5.4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protected path</strong> That portion of an exitway within a <strong>firecell</strong> which</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is protected from the effects of smoke by <strong>smoke separations</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protected shaft</strong> A space, other than a <strong>safe path</strong>, enclosed by</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fire separations</strong> or <strong>external walls</strong> used to house <strong>building</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>services, lifts, or conveyors which pass from one <strong>firecell</strong> to another.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purlin</strong> A horizontal member laid to span across <strong>rafters</strong> or trusses,</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and to which the roof <strong>cladding</strong> is attached.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purlin</strong> Includes <strong>tile batten</strong>. A horizontal member laid to span</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across <strong>rafters</strong> or trusses and to which the <strong>roof cladding</strong> is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attached.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose group</strong> The classification of spaces within a <strong>building</strong></td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>according to the activity for which the spaces are used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definitions

R

R A plain round reinforcing bar of the stated diameter in millimetres.
R-value The common abbreviation for describing the values of both thermal resistance and total thermal resistance.

Radiocommunications has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989.

Rafter A framing timber, normally parallel to the slope of the roof, providing support for sarking, purlins or roof cladding.

Rafter A framing timber normally parallel to the slope of the roof and providing support for the purlins or roof covering, or ceiling lining.

Railway line has the meaning ascribed to it by section 2 of the Transport Services Licensing Act 1989.

The definition of ‘Railway line’ in the Transport Services Licensing Act 1989 has been repealed by the Railways Act 2005. Section 4 of the Railways Act 2005 now contains the definition for “railway line”.

Section 4 states

“railway line” —

(a) means a single rail or set of rails, having a gauge of 550 mm or greater between them, laid for the purposes of transporting people or goods by rail; and
(b) includes—

(i) sleepers, associated formation and ballast, tunnels, and bridges; and
(ii) in relation to a single rail or set of rails that are laid on a road for the purposes of 1 or more light rail vehicles,—

(A) any area between the rails; and
(B) the area that extends 500 mm outside the extremity of any light rail vehicle being used on that single rail or set of rails; and
(iii) a set of rails, having a gauge of less than 550 mm between them, that is designated as a railway line in regulations made under section 59(l); and
(iv) except as provided in subparagraph (ii), any area within 5 m of a single rail or within 5 m of a line drawn midway between a set of rails; but
(c) excludes—

(i) a railway line that is part of a railway used as an amusement device as defined in section 21A(1) of the Machinery Act 1950:
(ii) a railway line excluded by regulations made under section 59(m):
(iii) a railway line that exclusively serves private cable cars”.

Reasonably visible, in relation to a specified feature, and for the purposes of Clause F6, means that the specified feature is visible to a person who—

(a) is 10 metres from it, or the greatest distance from it that it is possible to go in the open space surrounding it, whichever is the lesser; and
(b) has sight that is not defective, or is corrected (for example, by an optical appliance).
Definitions

**Definition**

**Reflectance** The ratio of the flux reflected from a surface to the flux incident on it.

**Regional authority** means—

(a) a *regional council*; or

(b) a *unitary authority*

**Regional council** has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002.

**Registrar** has the meaning given to it by section 282 of the *Building Act 2004*.

**Regulations** means regulations in force under the *Building Act 2004*.

**Regulator** A device which automatically regulates the pressure or volume of gas passing through it to a predetermined level.

**Reinforcement** Any form of reinforcing rod, bar or mesh that complies with the relevant requirements of NZS 3109.

**Relevant boundary** means the *boundary of an allotment* which is *other property* in relation to the *building* concerned and from which is measured the separation between the *building* and that *other property*. For the *external wall* of any *building*, the *relevant boundary* shall be the nearest of the following *boundaries*:

(a) A *boundary* of a freehold *allotment*, except that where the *other property* is a road, railway line or public *open space* the *relevant boundary* is the *boundary on the far side of that other property*.

(b) A *boundary* of a cross-lease or of a company lease or licence, except that where the *other property* is *open space* to which the lessee or licensee of the *building* concerned has an exclusive right of access and occupation or to which two or more occupiers have rights of access and occupation the *relevant boundary* is the *boundary on the far side of that other property*.

(c) A *boundary* shown on a unit plan excluding a *boundary* between a principal unit and its accessory unit, except that where the *other property* is *open space* which is common property, the *relevant boundary* is the *boundary on the far side of that other property*.

**Source**

CD-G7, CD-G8

BA04

BA04

BA04

CD-G10,

CD-G11

Simple House

CD-C
DEFINITIONS

COMMENT:
1. Where an easement, such as a right of way, occurs within an allotment, the relevant boundary shall remain the same as if the easement did not exist.

2. Boundaries within a cross-lease or company lease or licence are shown on a survey plan. In some cases the boundary is the external wall or roof of a building.

3. The unit title boundaries of principal units, accessory units, and common property are shown in the unit plan. A boundary is frequently an internal or external wall, an upper floor, or the roof of a building.

4. A wall along a boundary between two allotments is called a “party wall” when the owners of the allotments each have legal rights in respect of that wall registered by way of easements on one or both titles. An internal wall between cross-leases, company leases, or unit titles, or between one of them and common property, is not generally called a party wall but in that case also the lessees, unit title holders, or corporate body concerned each have legal rights in respect of that wall. Such a wall separates areas which are other property in relation to each other, but the wall itself is part of each property. The fire protection consequence of that legal concept is that such a wall can be regarded as a fire separation providing protection against horizontal fire spread in each direction. In other words, that wall may provide the appropriate FRR instead of each property having its own wall of that FRR.

RELIEF VENT
A vent pipe which is connected to a discharge stack below the lowest branch connection and which connects at its upper end to the discharge stack vent or terminates as an open vent.

RESERVOIR
Body of water impounded by one or more dams or dikes, inclusive of its shores and banks and of any facility or installation necessary for its operation.

RIBBON BOARD
Includes soffit plate. A horizontal framing timber secured to, or checked into, the edges of studs and supporting eaves bearers.

RIDGE BEAM
A single beam that supports rafters of a skillion roof.

RISK GROUP A, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means buildings—
(a) whose occupants are required to remain in the building until the main lighting system is restored; or
(b) whose evacuation time is longer than 90 minutes.

RISK GROUP B, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means buildings—
(a) whose evacuation time is 30 minutes or longer but not longer than 90 minutes; or
(b) whose occupant load is more than 1 000.

RISK GROUP C, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4, means buildings not in risk group A or risk group B.

RESERVOIR CAPACITY
Total or gross storage capacity of the reservoir at full supply level.

RISK MATRIX
A table that allows the calculation of a risk score by the allocation and summing of scores for a range of design and location factors applying to a specific building design.
**Definitions**

**Risk score** An aggregated numerical score for a proposed building as defined by E2/AS1. The risk score is determined by completion of the risk matrix.

**Road** has the meaning ascribed to it by section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974 and includes a public place and also includes a motorway.

**Roddling point** A removable cap at ground level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.

**Roof** That part of a building having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of 60° or less to the horizontal.

**Roof underlay** An absorbent permeable building paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water in association with roof cladding performance.

The roof underlay shall have the properties in Table 23 of the Acceptable Solution E2/AS1 for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture:

(a) absorbency of 100 g/m² or greater
(b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less
(c) water resistance of 100 mm or greater
(d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0
(e) shrinkage no more than 0.5%
(f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.

**Room-sealed appliance** An appliance designed so that air for combustion neither enters from, nor combustion products enter into, the room in which the appliance is located.

**Running bonds.** See bond

**S**

**Saddle flashing** A flashing used to weatherproof the junction between a horizontal and vertical surface.

**Safe path** That part of an exitway which is protected from the effects of fire by fire separations, external walls, or by distance when exposed to open air.

**Safe place** A place of safety in the vicinity of a building, from which people may safely disperse after escaping the effects of a fire. It may be a place such as a street, open space, public space or an adjacent building.

**Safety colour (green, red or yellow)** A colour of specified properties to which a safety meaning is attributed.

**Safety glass** means a glass so treated or combined with other materials as to reduce the likelihood of injury to persons when it is cracked or broken.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety shut-off system</strong></td>
<td>An arrangement of valves and associated control systems which shuts off the supply of gas when required by a device which senses an unsafe condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety sign</strong></td>
<td>A particular type of sign which comprises a geometric form and a safety colour, together with a safety symbol or text (that is, words, letters, numbers or a combination of these) and gives a particular safety message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety symbol</strong></td>
<td>means a graphic symbol used in a safety sign.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sanitary appliance</strong></td>
<td>An appliance which is intended to be used for sanitation, but which is not a sanitary fixture. Included are machines for washing dishes and clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sanitary fixture</strong></td>
<td>Any fixture which is intended to be used for sanitation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sanitation</strong></td>
<td>The term used to describe the activities of washing and/or excretion carried out in a manner or condition such that the effect on health is minimised, with regard to dirt and infection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scaffolding</strong></td>
<td>used in the course of the construction process, means any structure, framework, swinging stage, suspended scaffolding, or boatswain’s chair, that is of a temporary nature and that is used or intended to be used for: the support or protection of workers engaged in, or in connection with construction work for the purpose of carrying out that work, or the support of materials used in connection with the work; and includes any plank, coupling, fastening, fitting, or device used in connection with the construction, erection, or use of scaffolding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scupper</strong></td>
<td>An opening in a parapet or enclosed balustrade to allow water to drain into a rainwater head.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Sealant** | A flexible neutral cure sealant for gap filling and weatherproofing that complies with:  
(a) Type F, Class 20 LM or 25 LM of ISO 11600, or  
(b) low modulus Type II Class A of Federal Specification TT-S-00230C. | Simple House |
| **Secondary element** | A building element not providing load bearing capacity to the structure and if affected by fire, instability or collapse of the building structure will not occur. | CD-B2, CD-C |
| **Secondary flow path** | The path over which surface water will follow if the drainage system becomes overloaded or inoperative. | CD-E1 |
| **Secondary private stairway** | A private stairway other than a main or minor private stairway, intended to provide access to another floor containing only bedrooms, bathroom or similar accommodation. | CD-D1 |
| **Service ramp** | means a ramp that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods. | CD-D1 |
| **Service stairway** | means a stairway that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods. | CD-D1 |
| **Sewer** | A drain that is under the control of, or maintained by, a network utility operator. | Code |
Definitions

**Sill support bar** A bar or mechanism complying with EM6, E2/VM1 tests, and Clause B2 of the *Building Code*, and used to support the weight of aluminium window and door joinery that is installed over drained cavities.

**Simple house** A house that is described in Section 1 of this Simple House Acceptable Solution.

**Sitework** means work on a building site, including earthworks, preparatory to, or associated with the construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building.

**Sillion roof** A pitched roof where the ceiling lining is parallel and close to the roof cladding. The roof may be mono-pitch or may consist of more than one roof plane. These roofs may have rafters exposed below the ceiling.

**Smoke cell** A space within a building which is enclosed by an envelope of smoke separations, or external walls, roofs, and floors.

**Smoke control door** A doorset with closefitting single or multi-leaves which are impermeable to the passage of smoke, fitted with smoke seals and installed within a smoke separation. The door, in the event of smoke, if not already closed, will close automatically and be held closed.

**Smoke developed index (SDI)** That index number for smoke developed when determined according to the standard test method for measuring the properties of lining materials.

**Smoke separation** Any vertical, horizontal or inclined building element with known smoke-stopping or smoke-leakage characteristics.

**Socket outlet** An accessory fixed to a wall or ceiling and designed to accept a plug that extends the electrical supply to an appliance by means of a flexible cable.

**Soffit bearer** See eaves bearer.

**Soffit plate** See ribbon board.

**Soft edge** A compatible soft edging seamed onto flashings to provide closure to profiled cladding.

**Soil fixture** A sanitary fixture constructed to receive solid and/or liquid excreted human waste. It includes bedpan disposal units, slop sinks, urinals, water closet pans, and water-flushed sanitary towel disposal units.

**Sound transmission class (STC)** A single number rating derived from measured values of transmission loss in accordance with classification ASTM E 413, Determination of Sound Transmission Class. It provides an estimate of the performance of a partition in certain common sound insulation situations.

**Spacing or spaced** The distance at which members are spaced, measured centre to centre.
Definitions

**Spans** See member span and support span.

**Specific design** Design and detailing for compliance with the Building Code, of a proposed part or parts of a building which are not shown in this Acceptable Solution.

**Specific design** Design and detailing of a proposed building or parts of a building, demonstrating compliance with the Building Code, that shall be provided to the building consent authority for assessment and approval as part of the building consent process. Buildings, or parts of buildings, requiring specific design are beyond the scope of the Simple House Acceptable Solution.

**Specified features**, for the purposes of Clause F6, means the following:
- (a) building elements that may act as obstructions:
- (b) safety features required under clauses of the Building Code other than Clause F6 (for example, handrails required under Clause D1):
- (c) changes in direction:
- (d) stairs and ramps:
- (e) escape doors:
- (f) entries to a safe place.

**Specified intended life** has the meaning given to it by section 113(3) of the Building Act 2004.

Section 113(3) states:

“(3) In subsection (2), specified intended life, in relation to a building, means the period of time, as stated in an application for a building consent or in the consent itself, for which the building is proposed to be used for its intended use.”

**Specified system**—

(a) means a system or feature that—

(i) is contained in a building; and

(ii) contributes to the proper functioning of the building (for example, an automatic sprinkler system);

And

(iii) is declared by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, to be a specified system for the purposes of this Act; and

(b) includes a cable car.

**Spread of flame index (SFI)** That index number for spread of flame which is determined according to the standard test method for measuring the properties of lining materials.

**Spillway** Weir, channel, conduit, tunnel, gate or other structure designed to permit discharges from the reservoir.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>Source</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stability</strong> In the context of <em>fire</em> protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a <em>primary element</em>, when subject to the <em>standard test</em> for <em>fire</em> resistance, has continued to carry its <em>fire</em> design load without failure.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> The <em>fire</em> design load should be as specified in B1/VM1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stairway</strong> A series of steps or stairs with or without landings, including all necessary <em>handrails</em> and giving access between two different levels.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stainless steel flashings</strong> Stainless steel <em>flashings</em> shall be:</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) minimum thickness of 0.45 mm, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Type 304 or 316 stainless steel in accordance with Table 1 of ISO/TS 15510.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stanchion</strong> A connecting device, fixed into the structure of a <em>building</em>, that provides support for <em>handrails</em>, aerials and similar structures.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Standards</strong> means specifications for <em>building</em> materials, methods, processes or practices that provide a basis for determining consistent and acceptable minimum levels of quality, performance, safety and reliability.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Standards are developed by organisations that are recognised by the Government. In New Zealand, standards are developed by a trading arm of the Standards Council, a crown entity operating under the Standards Act 1988. In Australia, standards are developed by Standards Australia, which is recognised through a memorandum of understanding with the Commonwealth Government.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Standard test</strong> A test method which is recognised as being appropriate for the <em>fire</em> protection properties being assessed.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> A list of <em>standard test</em> methods is given in Appendix C of C/AS1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Standard year</strong> For the purposes of determining natural lighting, the hours between 8 am and 5 pm each day with an allowance being made for daylight saving.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Statutory authority</strong> means an authority or organisation that has the statutory power to classify or register land or <em>buildings</em> for any purpose.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stopend</strong> A turn-up at the upper edge of profiled metal <em>cladding</em>, or at the end of gutters and some types of <em>flashings</em>.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> A stopend assists the control of moisture by ensuring any moisture reaching the edge of the roofing is deflected from further entry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Storage water heater</strong> A <em>water tank</em> with an integral <em>water heater</em> for the storage of hot water.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Storey</strong> That portion of a <em>building</em> included between the upper surface of any floor and the upper surface of the floor immediately above, except the top storey shall be that portion of a <em>building</em> included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Definitions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Strength reduction factor</strong> The factor by which the ultimate strength is multiplied to obtain the design strength.</td>
<td>CD-B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> NZS 4203: 1992 uses the terms ideal strength in place of ultimate strength, and dependable strength in place of design strength.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stretcher bonds, See bond</strong></td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Structural fire endurance rating (S)</strong> The fire resistance rating (FRR) intended to prevent fire spread or structural collapse for the complete burnout of the firecell.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stucco</strong> A wall cladding system formed from reinforced solid plaster over a rigid or non-rigid backing.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stud</strong> A vertical framing timber.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Suite</strong> A firecell providing residential accommodation for the exclusive use of one person or of several people known to one another. It comprises one or more rooms for sleeping and may include spaces used for associated domestic activities such as hygiene and cooking.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> 1. Bed numbers are limited to 6 in purpose groups SC and SD or 12 in purpose group SA in accordance with C/AS1 Paragraphs 6.6.5 and 6.7.6. Examples may be found in hotels, motels and residential care facilities, such as old people’s homes or in hospices providing temporary family accommodation. 2. It is assumed that the social cohesion of the occupants by virtue of the personal relationship (as family members, friends or associates) would ensure that any individual, becoming aware of fire, would naturally assist others within the firecell to escape. The term suite does not apply to a group of bedrooms where each room is available to different &quot;key-holders&quot;. In some cases a suite may be a single bedroom.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sump</strong> A chamber which is installed in the drain and incorporates features to intercept and retain silt, gravel and other debris.</td>
<td>CD-E1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supervise</strong>, in relation to building work, means provide control or direction and oversight of the building work to an extent that is sufficient to ensure that the building work— (a) is performed competently; and (b) complies with the building consent under which it is carried out.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Support span</strong> A clear distance along a member between supports, measured in plan (horizontally).</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surface finish</strong> The combination of a surface coating and substrate material on surfaces of building elements exposed to view. It can be an applied decorative coating or the uncoated building element itself. For interior surfaces the requirements are evaluated in terms of SFI and SDI. For exterior surfaces the requirements are evaluated in terms of rate of heat release as determined by Appendix C, Paragraph C9.1.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surface water</strong> All naturally occurring water, other than sub-surface water, which results from rainfall on the site or water flowing onto the site, including that flowing from a drain, stream, river, lake or sea.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tailing dam</strong>  Dam constructed to retain tailings or other waste materials from mining or industrial operations.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tailpipe</strong> A device placed at the low point of a gas piping system to collect condensate, and from which the condensate may be removed.</td>
<td>CD-G10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Territorial authority (TA)</strong> means a city council or district council named in Part 2 of Schedule 2 of the Local Government Act 2002; and—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) in relation to land within the district of a territorial authority, or a building on or proposed to be built on any such land, means that territorial authority; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) in relation to any part of a coastal marine area (within the meaning of the Resource Management Act 1991) that is not within the district of a territorial authority, or a building on or proposed to be built on any such part, means the territorial authority whose district is adjacent to that part.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Territorial authority</strong> City or district council (as named in Schedule 2, Part 2 of the Local Government Act 2002) responsible for community wellbeing and development, environmental health and safety (including building control, civil defence, and environmental health matters), infrastructure (roading and transport, sewerage, water/stormwater), recreation and culture, and resource management including land use planning and development control.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theatre</strong> A place of assembly intended for the production and viewing of performing arts, and consisting of an auditorium and stage with provision for raising and suspending stage scenery above and clear of the working area.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F4 (Sep 07)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thermal resistance</strong> The resistance to heat flow of a given component of a building element. It is equal to the air temperature difference (°C) needed to produce unit heat flux (W/m²) through unit area (m²) under steady conditions. The units are °Cm²/W.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Threshold</strong> A sill to an external door, or the floor under an internal door.</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tile batten</strong> See purlin.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Top plate</strong> A plate placed over the top end of studs.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total thermal resistance</strong> The overall air-to-air thermal resistance across all components of a building element such as a wall, roof or floor. (This includes the surface resistances which may vary with environmental changes eg, temperature and humidity, but for most purposes can be regarded as having standard values as given in NZS 4214.)</td>
<td>CD-E3, CD-G5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total wall area,</strong> in relation to a building, means the sum (expressed in square metres) of the following:</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) the wall area of the building; and</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the area (expressed in square metres) of all vertical glazing in external walls of the building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Town gas</strong> A manufactured gas.</td>
<td>CD-G11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Toxic environment</strong> An environment that contains contaminants that can contaminate the water supply in concentrations greater than those included in the New Zealand Drinking Water Standard 1995.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Trade** means any trade, business, industry, profession, occupation, activity of commerce, or undertaking relating to—  
(a) the supply or acquisition of goods or services; or  
(b) the acquisition of household units or any interest in land. | BA04    |
| **Transverse flashing** A roof flashing that runs across the roof slope, at right angles to the roof cladding profile. | CD-E2   |
| **Trap** A chamber which is installed in the drain and incorporates features to intercept and retain floatable debris. | CD-E1   |
| **Trapezoidal** A type of profiled metal cladding with symmetrical or asymmetrical crests, with troughs between the crests. | CD-E2   |
| **Travel distance** The length of the escape route as a whole or the individual lengths of its parts, namely:  
(a) Open paths  
(b) Protected paths and  
(c) Safe paths. | Code    |
<p>| <strong>Trickle ventilator</strong> A controllable ventilation opening through the external envelope to the outside to provide background ventilation. | CD-G4   |
| <strong>Trimmer</strong> A member supporting the wall framing beneath, or over an opening in a non-loadbearing wall and carrying wind loads to the trimmer studs. | Simple House |
| <strong>Trimmer stud</strong> A stud located on the side of an opening. | Simple House |
| <strong>Trough profile</strong> A type of profiled metal cladding comprising vertical ribs with flat, or lightly profiled pans between the ribs. Also known as ribbed, secret fixed or tray profile. | CD-E2   |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>U</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underlay</td>
<td>The material used behind a roof or wall cladding. Refer Wall underlay and Roof underlay. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unisex facilities</td>
<td>Facilities available for use by either sex. CD-G1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMMENT:**
Unisex facilities may also be described as both gender facilities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Unitary authority</strong></th>
<th>has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002. BA04/LGA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Section 5(1) states:</td>
<td>“unitary authority” means a territorial authority that has the responsibilities, duties, and powers of a regional council conferred on it under—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) the provisions of any Act; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) an Order in Council giving effect to a reorganisation scheme”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Universal access** | Where elements and spaces are accessible to and usable by people of all ages and abilities to the greatest extent possible. Simple House |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Unprotected area</strong></th>
<th>in relation to an external wall of a building means: Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Any part of the external wall which has less than the required FRR. For example, a non fire rated window, door or other opening or sheet metal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Any part of the external wall which has combustible material more than 1.0mm thick attached to or applied to its external face, whether for cladding or any other purpose.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>uPVC flashings</strong></th>
<th>uPVC flashings shall be a minimum of 0.75 mm thick and: Simple House</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) comply with the requirements of the following Clauses of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii) Clause 9.2 Impact resistance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii) Clause 9.3 Tensile strength</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv) Clause 9.4 Colourfastness and impact resistance following ultraviolet light exposure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) where exposed to the weather, shall also comply with Section 8 of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) have a finish colour with a reflectance of 40% or more, when measured in accordance with ASTM C1549 or ASTM E903.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>V</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Valley board</strong></td>
<td>A board laid to support a valley gutter. Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Valley gutter</strong></td>
<td>A gutter running down the valley formed by the intersection of two pitched roof surfaces. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Valve vented storage water heater (unvented storage water heater)</strong></td>
<td>A storage water heater in which the required venting to the atmosphere is controlled by a valve. CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vapour barrier</strong></td>
<td>Sheet material or coating having a low water-vapour transmission, and used to minimise water-vapour penetration in buildings. (Vapour barriers are sometimes referred to as damp-proof membranes.) CD-B2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vent line</strong> A pipe or tube which conveys gas to a safe place outside the building from a gas pressure regulator relief valve.</td>
<td>CD-G10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vent pipe</strong> A pipe for the purpose of protecting water seals that at its upper end is either open to the atmosphere or fitted with an air admittance valve and that at its lower end is connected to a discharge pipe.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verification Method</strong> means a method by which compliance with the Building Code may be verified.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VSG</strong> Visual stress graded, refers to verified timber that is initially sorted visually in accordance with NZS 3603. See also MSG.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>W</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall</strong> refer External wall.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall area</strong>, in relation to a building, means the area (expressed in square metres) of internally-exposed external walls, including any door openings, of the building.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall bracing element</strong> A section of wall that performs a bracing function.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall underlay</strong> An absorbent synthetic wrap used as part of the wall cladding system to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which may occasionally penetrate the wall cladding is directed back to the exterior of the building. The wall underlay shall have the properties in Table 23 of the Acceptable Solution E2/AS1 for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture: (a) absorbency – no requirement (b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less (c) water resistance of 20 mm or greater (d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0 (e) shrinkage no more than 0.5% (f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall underlay</strong> A building paper, synthetic material or rigid sheathing used as part of the wall cladding system to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which occasionally penetrates the wall cladding is directed back to the exterior of the building.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waste pipe</strong> A discharge pipe that conveys the discharge from waste water fixtures to a gully trap.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waste water fixture</strong> A sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance used to receive wastes, and which is not a soil fixture.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water heater</strong> A device for heating water.</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water main</strong> A water supply pipe that is under the control, or maintained by a network utility operator.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waterproof and waterproofing</strong> The complete and total resistance of a building element to the ingress of any moisture.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water seal</strong> The depth of water that can be retained in a water trap.</td>
<td>CD-G2, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water supply system</strong></td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipes, fittings and tanks used or intended to be used for the storage and reticulation of water from a <em>water main</em> or other water source to <em>sanitary fixtures</em>, <em>sanitary appliances</em> and fittings within a <em>building</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water tank (vessel)</strong></td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A covered fixed container for storing hot or cold water.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water trap</strong></td>
<td>CD-G2, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A fitting designed to retain a depth of water that prevents foul air and gases escaping from the <em>plumbing system</em> or <em>foul water drainage system</em> and entering a <em>building</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weathertightness and weathertight</strong></td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms used to describe the resistance of a <em>building</em> to the weather. <em>Weathertightness</em> is a state where water is prevented from entering and accumulating behind the <em>cladding</em> in amounts that can cause undue dampness or damage to the <em>building elements</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The term <em>weathertightness</em> is not necessarily the same as <em>waterproof</em>. However, a <em>weathertight building</em>, even under severe weather conditions, is expected to limit moisture ingress to inconsequential amounts, insufficient to cause undue dampness inside <em>buildings</em> and damage to <em>building elements</em>. Moisture that may occasionally enter is able to harmlessly escape or evaporate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weathertightness</strong></td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and <em>weathertight</em> Terms used to describe the resistance of a <em>building</em> to the weather.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wet area</strong></td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An area within a <em>building</em> supplied with water from a water supply system including bathrooms and showers, laundries, sanitary compartments and kitchen areas.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wetwall</strong></td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The exterior <em>cladding</em> on a wall with a <em>drained cavity</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wharenui</strong></td>
<td>CD-C, CD-H1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A communal meeting house having a large open floor area used for both assembly and sleeping in the traditional Maori manner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wind zone</strong></td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Categorisation of wind force experienced on a particular site as determined in NZS 3604, Section 5.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum ultimate limit state speeds are:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Low wind zone</em> = wind speed of 32 m/s*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Medium wind zone</em> = wind speed of 37 m/s*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>High wind zone</em> = wind speed of 44 m/s*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Very high wind zone</em> = wind speed of 50 m/s*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Extra high wind zone</em> = wind speed of 55 m/s.*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Specific design</em> is required for wind speeds greater than 55 m/s.*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wire dog</strong></td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galvanised or stainless steel wire, D or Z shaped nail, spiked at each end. Used for fixing timber together to resist uplift</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Working day</strong></td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means any day except—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, the Sovereign’s Birthday, Labour Day, and Waitangi Day; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the day observed in the appropriate area as the anniversary of the province of which the area forms a part; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) a day in the period beginning on 20 December in any year and ending with the close of 10 January in the following year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

(Revised by Amendment 6)

This is a complete index for the New Zealand Building Code and Compliance Documents.

A

Access

see Access Routes, and Mechanical Installations for Access

Access chambers

see Maintenance access to drains

Access points

see Maintenance access to drains

Access to a facility

food and work areas................................................................. G1/AS1 3.2, Figure 10
lobbies.......................................................................................... G1/AS1 6.3.1
unisex facilities ........................................................................ G1/AS1 1.1.5 c)

Access Routes ................................................................. D1/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 1.4.1, 1.5.1, 1.5.3 a), 1.5.4, 1.5.5, 1.6.1, 1.7.1, 1.8.1, 2.0, 5.1.3, Figure 27

see also Accessible routes, Activity space, Doors, Escape routes, Handrails, Height clearances, Level access routes, Mechanical Installations for Access, a Person with a disability, Ramps, Stairs, Obstructions, Vehicles, Wheelchairs

access to buildings ........................................................................................................ NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (a) (b), D1.3.3 (a) (b)
access within buildings ................................................................................ NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (c), D1.3.5

corridors ................................................................................................................ NZBC/D1.3.1 (e), F6.3.1

level access routes ...................................................................................................... D1/AS1 2.0

protection from falling ............................................................................................... D1/AS1 2.3

slip resistance ............................................................................................................ D1/AS1 2.1, Table 2

width ......................................................................................................................... D1/AS1 2.2

location ..................................................................................................................... D1/AS1 2.2

principal entrance ...................................................................................................... D1/AS1 1.1

service and maintenance personnel ........................................................................ D1/AS1 11.0.3

Access to facilities ......................................................................................................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (c), G1.3.5; G3/AS1 Figure 1

Accessible accommodation units ............................................................. D1/AS1 9.0, 9.1, 9.1.1, 9.2.1, Table 9

see also a Person with a disability

bedrooms .................................................................................................................. D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)

dining areas ............................................................................................................ D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)

facilities .................................................................................................................... D1/AS1 9.2

kitchens .................................................................................................................... D1/AS1 9.2.1 b); G3/AS1 1.5.2, Figure 1

laundry ..................................................................................................................... G2/AS1 1.2, Figure 2

sitting areas ............................................................................................................. D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)

toilets and baths ...................................................................................................... D1/AS1 9.2.1 a)

Accessible routes .............................................................. NZBC/D1.3.3, D1.3.4; D1/AS1 1.1.1 to 1.1.3, 1.5.5 b), 2.1.1, 2.2.1, 7.0.1, 7.0.6, 11.0.1, Figure 27

access to performance areas .................................................................................. D1/AS1 8.2

Accessible units ......................................................................................................... D1/AS1 1.1.3

Activity space .......................................................................................................... NZBC/D1.3.2 (a), D1.3.4 (b), G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b), G5.3.3

Aged, homes for

see Old people's homes

Air

see also Ventilation

air flow control ........................................................................................................ NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1 3.0
changes ..................................................................................................................... G4/VM1 1.0.1
ducts ......................................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.9.5, 6.19.14, 6.20.20, 6.20.21

purity ......................................................................................................................... G4/VM1 2.0
Air-handling systems ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.1 b)

Airborne and Impact Sound .............................................................. G6
  impact insulation class (IIC) ....................................................... NZBC/G6.3.2
  noise transmission between abutting occupancies .................. NZBC/G6.1, G6.2
  sound insulation tests ................................................................. G6/VM1 2.0
  sound transmission class (STC) .................................................. NZBC/G6.3.1; G6/VM1 1.0

Alerting devices ........................................................................ F7/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2, 2.2.2 b)
  audible ........................................................................................ F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2 c) f)
  visual ......................................................................................... F7/AS1 2.1.2 c) f)

Alerting the Fire Service .............................................................. F7/AS1 1.2.2, 1.2.7, 2.1.2 a), 2.2

Alternative solutions
  accessible routes ................................................................. D1/AS1 11.0
  bedding and back-filling drains ............................................... E1/AS1 3.9.8

laundry tubs ................................................................................. G2/AS1 1.0.3
open vented storage water heaters ........................................... G12/AS1 6.9.1
solid waste storage ..................................................................... G15/AS1 3.1
storage water heaters
  seismic restraint ........................................................................ G12/AS1 6.11.4
  thermal resistance ...................................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.5 (Comment)
unvented (valve vented) storage water heaters ......................... G12/AS1 6.10.1, Figure 14
watertightness testing ................................................................. G12/AS1 7.5

Ancillary Buildings .................................................................... NZBC/A1 8.0, D1.2.1, D1.3.2 (h),
  D1.3.3, G1.3.5, G8.2, G12.3.0

Apartments
  see Housing, multi-unit dwellings

Appliances
  see Sanitary appliances

Aprons ....................................................................................... C/AS1 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2

Artificial Light ........................................................................... G8; NZBC/H1.2 (c), H1.3.5; D1/AS1 1.5.4 (Comment), 1.8, 4.6;
  adequate lighting ......................................................................... NZBC/G8.2
  energy consumption .................................................................... H1/AS1 6.0
  minimum illuminance .............................................................. NZBC/G8.3; D1/AS1 4.6.1, Table 8; G8/AS1 1.0.1, Table 1
  wattage required ......................................................................... D1/AS1 4.6.1, Table 8; G8/AS1 1.0.1, Table 1

Asbestos
  see Hazardous Building Materials

Assembly care buildings
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Assembly service buildings
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Automatic extinguishers ............................................................ G11/AS1 6.0
B

Backflow prevention
see Protection of water supplies


Banks........................................................................................................ NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Commercial buildings

Barges.......................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.5, 8.3.9, 9.6.8.2, 9.6.9.4, Figures 36, 92 and 97
see also Gutters, barges and fascias

Barriers........................................................................NZBC/F4.3.1, F4.3.4, F4.3.5, F5.3.2, F5.3.4; D1/AS1 1.7;
F4/AS1 1.0, F5/AS1 1.0
see also Access Routes, Handrails, Safety from Falling,
Timber barriers
accessible route ........................................................................................ D1/AS1 2.3.1
construction ................................................................................... F4/AS1 1.2, Figures 1-4
construction site ........................................................................... F4/AS1 1.2.6
fences.................................................................................................. F5/AS1 1.1, 1.1.2
around water hazards .................................................................... F5/AS1 1.2
for specific hazards ................................................................. F5/AS1 1.0.2
heights.......................................................................................... F4/AS1 1.1, Table 1
hoardings .......................................................................................... F5/AS1 1.1, 1.1.3, 1.1.5
viewing windows .............................................................................. F5/AS1 1.1.4
parapet and rail barriers .............................................................. F4/AS1 1.2.3, Figure 5
safety enclosures for ladders ........................................... D1/AS1 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22
scaffolding ...................................................................................... F4/AS1 1.2.6
star barriers ................................................................................... F4/AS1 Figure 4
toeboards ....................................................................................... F5/AS1 1.4
types of barriers ................................................................................ F5/AS1 1.0.3

Basements .................................................................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 ii), 3.7.1, 3.15.2, 4.5.15, 6.9.3, 6.14.4, Figure 3.19

Basins................................................................. G1/AS1 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1; G13/AS1 3.3.2, 5.5.2, Table 2

Baths ................................................................................................ G1/AS1 Table 2; G13/AS1 Table 2

Bedrooms
see Habitable spaces

Bidets .................................................................................................. G1/AS1 2.4; G13/AS1 5.5.2, Table 2

Boarding Houses
see Communal residential buildings

Boundary
see Notional boundary, Relevant boundaries

Bridges
see Ancillary buildings

Building construction
non-solid construction ......................................................... H1/VM1 1.1.2, H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4
solid construction ............................................................... H1/VM1 1.1.2, H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4
thermal envelope .............................................................. H1/VM1 1.0, 1.1.2, H1/AS1 2.0, 2.1.3, 2.1.4
thermal resistance (R-value) .................................................. H1/VM1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.4.1,
H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.3.1, 2.3.2

Building elements
NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.3, B2.3, E2.3.2, E2.3.3,
see also Floors, Ceilings, Roofs

primary elements .................................................. C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 a), cl, 5.6.1 a), 5.7.1, 5.7.4, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.9, 6.14.3, 7.1.2 b), 7.8.10 b), 7.9.4, 7.9.5 a), 7.10.3, 7.10.4, C/AS1

requiring noise control .............................................. G6/AS1 1.0.2, Figure 1

secondary elements ................................................. C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 b), 5.6.1 a), 5.7.1, 5.7.8, 7.1.2 b), 7.10.3, C/AS1

unrated primary ..................................................... C/AS1 5.9.4, Figure 5.2

Building height ..................................................... C/AS1 5.7.6 cl, 7.11.3 a), 7.11.4

Building performance index
see Energy efficiency provisions

Building site .............................................................. E1/VM1 3.2.2, 4.0.1, 4.1.10, E1/AS1 1.0.1
evaluation .............................................................. E1/VM1 1.0.3

Buildings

air-supported structures ........................................... C/AS1 6.20.18
atriums ...................................................................... C/AS1 6.2.2
building elements ..................................................... B1/VM4 2.0.3
building separation .................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3 (o)
car parking ............................................................... C/AS1 6.8.4, 6.10.3 to 6.10.6, 7.9.2, 7.9.16, Figure 6.2
carports ...................................................................... C/AS1 7.8.10 (Comment)
commercial .............................................................. H1/VM1 1.0, 1.0.2, H1/AS1 1.0.1, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 6.1.1
communal non-residential ........................................... H1/VM1 1.0, H1/AS1 1.0.1, 1.0.4, 6.1.1

communal residential .................................................. H1/VM1 1.0, H1/AS1 1.0.1
dwellings
attached and multi-unit .......................................... C/AS1 1.3.5, 1.3.6
detached ..................................................................... C/AS1 1.3.3
detached single story buildings .................................. C/AS1 3.8.4, 6.20.7
education ..................................................................... C/AS1 1.0.1, 1.0.4, 6.1.1

B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS2 1.0

E1/AS1 2.0, Figures 1 and 2

E2/AS2

C/AS1 2.2.5, 6.12.2

C/AS1 3.16.7

C/AS1 6.6.6

C/AS1 2.2.3

H1/VM1 1.0, 1.1, H1/AS1 1.0, 2.0

H1/VM1 1.1.3, 1.2.1

H1/VM1 1.1.3

H1/VM1 1.1.3, 1.2.1, H1/AS1 2.1.2

H1/VM1 1.1.3

H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.0.2, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 1.0.3

intended life

see Durability

intended use

see Intended use

large buildings ........................................................... H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.3, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 2.2.1, 4.0.1

masonry buildings .................................................... B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 1.1.1

membrane structures ............................................... NZBC/C4.1.1; C/AS1 6.20.17 to 6.20.19, C/AS1

minimum floor level .................................................. E1/AS1 2.0, Figures 1 and 2

multi-storey buildings .............................................. C/AS1 2.2.5, 6.12.2

open air auditoriums .................................................. C/AS1 3.16.5

open sided buildings ............................................... C/AS1 7.8.8 to 7.8.10, Figure 7.10

purpose group classification ..................................... C/AS1 2.2, Table 2.1

reference buildings ................................................... H1/VM1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4

remaining occupied during fire .................................. C/AS1 5.6.9

residential community care ........................................ C/AS1 2.4

seasonal use buildings .............................................. F7/AS1 1.1.2 c)
single-floor buildings ............................................... F7/AS1 1.1.2 a) b)
Buildings (continued)

- siteworks
  - see Structure
    - small buildings ............................................ H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.1.1, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 2.1, 4.0.1
    - theatres .................................................... C/AS1 6.3.1, 6.19.9, Figure 6.13
    - three-floor buildings ........................................ F1/AS1 1.1.2 b)
    - three storey buildings ........................................ G13/AS1 Figure 7
    - timber framed buildings .................................... B1/AS1 3.0, B1/AS3 1.1.1
    - two-floor buildings .......................................... F1/AS1 1.1.2 a) b)
    - wharenu .................................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), 6.7.9, H1/VM1 1.1.3
C

Call points.............................................................................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.4
Camping grounds........... NZBC/G2.2, G2.3.4; G1/AS1 3.4.2, Tables 1 to 3; G2/AS1 Table 1 see also Communal residential buildings
Car park ventilation .................................................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.4
Car parking buildings see Commercial buildings, Vehicles
Carports see Outbuildings
Catchment
characteristics .............................................. E1/VM1 1.0.2 a), 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.3, 4.2.1
Ceilings ............................................................................................................. NZBC/G6.3.1. G3/AS1 2.1.2, 2.2.3
floor/ceiling assemblies ......................................................................................... G6/AS1 Figure 3
Centres for people with disabilities see Communal non-residential buildings
Child care centres see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential Buildings
Children ........................................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (h), F4.3.3, F4.3.4 (f), F4.3.5 (a), F5.2 (d), F5.3.3, G15.3.2 (g); D1/AS1 4.1.8 a); F4/AS1 1.2.1, Figures 1 to 4; F5/AS1 1.0.2
See also Early childhood centres
Chimneys ............... B1/AS1 1.2, 8.0, B1/AS3 2.1; C/AS1 9.5, Figure 9.1, 9.2 and 9.3
bracing units ........................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.9, 1.9.3, 1.9.6, Table 2
brick chimneys ........................................................................................................ B1/AS3 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a), b), 1.2.1 a), 1.6.2 a), 1.7.1, 1.7.6, 1.8.1, 1.8.5 a), Figures 2 to 4 and 7, Table 1
cantilever height .................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.1.2
chimney bases ..................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.3 a), 1.6.1, 1.9.4 b)
chimney breasts .................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.5, Table 1
chimney depth ...................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.3
chimney height ..................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.2
chimney liners ...................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.4
chimney lintels ..................................................................................................... B1/AS3 Table 1
chimney materials .............................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.8
chimney stacks .................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.2, 1.6.1
chimney wall thickness ....................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.2, 1.2.1
chimney width ...................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.3
concrete chimneys .............................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) c), 1.2.1 b) c), 1.6.2 a) b), 1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.2, 1.8.5 b), Figures 4 and 5, Table 1
concrete masonry ................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.8.4
floor brackets ....................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.7.1, 1.7.3 to 1.7.5, 1.9.4 b) c), Figure 6
foundations .......................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.2, 1.1.3 a), 1.3, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.7.4, 1.7.5, 1.8.4, Figure 1
gathers ................................................................................................................ B1/AS3 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.7.5
hearts .................................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3
hearth slabs .......................................................................................................... B1/AS3 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3
packers ................................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.7.2, 1.7.6 c)
precast pumice concrete chimneys ..................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.1 b), 1.1.3 a) c), 1.2.1 c), 1.6.2 b), 1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.3, 1.8.5 c), Figures 5 and 7, Table 1
compressive strength ......................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.8.3 c)
construction of .................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.8.3
restraint .............................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.7, 1.7.1, 1.7.13, Figures 6 and 7
roof brackets ....................................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.7.1, 1.7.3, 1.7.4, Figure 6
roof ties ................................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.7.5
structural diaphragms ......................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.9.5
wall ties ................................................................................................................. B1/AS3 1.7.5, 1.7.7, 1.7.8
closely spaced wall ties ....................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.7.5, 1.9.4 c)
Index

NEW ZEALAND BUILDING CODE HANDBOOK

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Churches
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Cinemas
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Cladding finish colours
  E2/AS1 2.4

Classified uses
  NZBC/A1

Cleaners’ sinks
  G13/AS1 Table 2

Clubrooms
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Cold water expansion valves (explosion control valves)
  G12/AS1 6.3.3 a), 6.6.2, 6.6.3.

Colleges
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Commercial buildings
  NZBC/A1 5.0, E3.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b), G3.3.6.
  G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4, H1.2 (c);
  G3/AS1 2.0.1; H1/AS1 1.0

Communal non-residential buildings
  NZBC/A1 4.0, E1.3.2, E3.3.1, G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G5.3.5, G8.2,
  G9.3.4, H1.2 (c); H1/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4

Assembly care
  NZBC/A1 4.0.3

Assembly service
  NZBC/A1 4.0.2, H1.2 (a)

Halls
  NZBC/G5.3.5

Places of assembly
  D1/AS1 8.0

Community care
  NZBC/A1 4.0.2

Community service
  NZBC/A1 3.0.2

Communes
  see Housing, group dwellings

Community care buildings
  see Communal residential buildings

Community service buildings
  D1/AS1 1.1.3
  see also Communal residential buildings

Computer centres
  see Commercial buildings

Concealed spaces
  C/AS1 6.18.1, 6.18.10
  C/AS1 6.18.1, 6.18.4 to 6.18.6
  C/AS1 6.12.8
  C/AS1 6.19.7 to 6.18.10
  C/AS1 6.18.4
  C/AS1 6.18.2, 6.18.3, Figure 6.10
  see also External Moisture, Internal Moisture

Concealed works
  B1/VM4 A1.2.1 b)

Concrete
  B2/AS1 3.1
  see also Design, concrete

Condensation
  see Internal Moisture
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page REFERENCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction moisture</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximum acceptable moisture contents</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>measuring moisture content</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concrete floors</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timber</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moisture in materials</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction site barriers</td>
<td>F4/AS1 1.2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction and Demolition Hazards</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.3.2, F5.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barriers</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.3.2, F5.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demolition sites</td>
<td>F5/AS1 1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entry of children</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.2 (d), F5.3.3; F5/AS1 1.0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falling objects</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.2 (a) (b), F5.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lifting equipment</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contaminants</td>
<td>G14/VM1 1.6, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Hazardous agents on site, contaminants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel</td>
<td>F7/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 2.2.2 b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corridors</td>
<td>C/AS1 6.13.1, Figure 6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Access Routes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrosives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Structure, loads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross connections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Protection of water supplies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclic loads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Structure, loads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dampness
see External Moisture, Internal Moisture

Dams
see Ancillary buildings

Dangerous goods
see also Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes

Day care institution
see Early childhood centres, Communal non-residential buildings

Dead ends
see Escape routes

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Decks and pergolas
see Membrane roofs and decks
see Enclosed Balustrades
attachment to building structure
E2/AS1 7.2
pergolas
E2/AS1 7.2.2, Figure 15
slatted timber decks to walls
E2/AS1 7.2.1, Figure 15
cantilevered decks
E2/AS1 7.2.1.1, Figure 16
level thresholds
E2/AS1 7.3, Figures 17A and 17B
cantilevered decks
E2/AS1 7.3.1
removable surfaces
E2/AS1 7.3.1.1, Figure 16
timber removable surface
E2/AS1 7.3.1.2
ground floor level access
E2/AS1 7.3.2, Figure 17B
concrete slab
Paragraph 7.3.2.1, Figure 17B
timber floor
Paragraph 7.3.2.2, Figure 17B
thresholds for decks
E2/AS1 7.1, Figure 14
cantilevered decks
E2/AS1 7.1.2
slatted decks
E2/AS1 7.1.1, Figure 14

Deflections
see Structure

Demolition
see Construction and Demolition Hazards

Dental surgeries
see Commercial buildings

Amend 11
Sep 2010
Design
aluminium
B1/VM1 7.0, B1/AS1 4.0
cement
B1/VM1 3.0
concrete masonry
B1/VM1 4.0, B1/AS3 1.3.3
drains
see Drains
earth building
B1/VM1 8.0, B1/AS1 4.0
foundations
see Foundations

Amend 12
Oct 2011
loadings
B1/VM1 2.0
earthquake
B1/VM1 1.0, 2.0, B1/AS1 1.4, B1/AS3 1.9, Table 2
limit state
B1/VM1 2.0, 7.1

Amend 11
Sep 2010
siteworks
B1/VM1 10.0
steel
B1/VM1 5.0
strength reduction factor
B1/VM4 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4
structural design action standards
B1/VM1 2.0

Amend 12
Oct 2011
windows
see Windows
Design loads  
see Structure, loads

Detached dwellings  
see Housing

Differential movement  
see Structure, loads

Disabled persons  
see a Person with a disability

Discharge pipes  
G3/AS1 1.1.5; G13/AS1 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.6, 5.1.1, 5.5, 5.7.3, 5.7.7; Figures 6 and 11, Table 4
branch discharge pipes  
G13/AS1 Figure 7
diameters  
G13/AS1 3.3.2, 4.3, 5.3, Table 6, G13/AS2 3.6, 4.2
fixture discharge pipes  
G13/AS1 Figures 7 and 8, Tables 2 and 4
gradient  
G13/AS1 4.4, 5.4, G13/AS2 3.5, Table 2
waste pipes
combined waste pipes  
G13/AS1 Figure 5
developed lengths  
G13/AS1 Figures 5, 6 and 8

Discharge stacks  
G13/AS1 4.2.2 a), 4.5.1 b), 4.7, 5.3.1, 5.6, Figures 7 to 9, Tables 3, 4 and 6
see also Discharge pipes, Pipes
discharge stack vents  
G13/AS1 4.7.1 b), 5.2.1 b), 5.3.1, 5.6.1, 5.6.3 b), Figures 7 and 8, Table 6, G13/AS2 4.1.5, Figure 5

Discharge units  
G13/AS1 Table 2, G13/AS2 Table 2

Dishwashing machine  
G13/AS1 3.3.2 a) e), Table 2

Domestic buildings  
see Housing

Doors  
see also Windows and doors

NZBC/D1.3.4 (f), D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (n), D1.3.4 (f), D2.3.5 (c), F5.3.2 (d); C/AS1 3.9.1, 3.11.6, 6.19.4; D1/AS1 7.0, Figure 27;
acceptable obstructions  
C/AS1 3.3.6
accessible doors  
D1/AS1 7.0.3 to 7.0.5
accessible escape routes  
C/AS1 3.3.7
automatic sliding doors  
C/AS1 3.17.7
closers and latching  
C/AS1 3.17.1
degree and width of opening  
C/AS1 3.17.4, 3.17.5
delayed action unlocking devices  
C/AS1 3.17.11
direction of opening  
C/AS1 3.17.3, 3.17.4
door swings  
C/AS1 3.4.5 b), 3.13.2, 3.17.5 d) e)
fire doors  
C/AS1 3.3.1 b), 3.6.1 c), 3.11.9, 3.17.9, 3.17.13, 6.19.2 a), C7.1, Figures 3.29 to 3.31, Table 6.1;
frameless glass doors  
D1/AS1 7.0.7
glazing  
C/AS1 5.8.10, 5.8.11, D1/AS1 7.0.4, Figure 28
handles  
D1/AS1 7.0.5
hold-open devices  
C/AS1 3.17.1 b), 3.17.9, F7/AS1 1.3.6, 1.5.2
lift landing doors  
C/AS1 6.16.5 b), 6.19.13, Table 6.1
lobby doors  
D1/AS1 7.0.1
locking devices  
C/AS1 3.17.2, 3.18.6
markings  
C/AS1 6.19.6, 6.19.7
panic bolts  
C/AS1 3.17.14
reeling doors, automatic doors and access control systems  
C/AS1 3.17.7, 3.17.8, Figure 3.26; D1/AS1 7.0.6, Figure 29
signs  
C/AS1 3.17.9, 3.17.12, 6.9.11, 6.19.2 b), C7.1, Figures 3.27, 3.28 and 6.1, Table 6.1
smoke control doors  
C/AS1 3.17.9, 3.17.12, 6.9.11, 6.19.2 b), C7.1,
Doors (continued)

subdividing escape routes .......................................................... C/AS1 3.17
turnstiles .................................................................................. D1/AS1 7.0.6
visibility .................................................................................. D1/AS1 7.0.4
vision panels ........................................................................... C/AS1 3.17.6, 5.8.10
width ...................................................................................... D1/AS1 7.0.3

Drains ......................................................................................... C/AS1 9.4

Downpipes .............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.4.2 a) b) i, 3.7.8, 4.0, 5.1
installation ............................................................................... E1/AS1 4.3
materials .................................................................................. E1/AS1 4.1, Table 4
sizing ...................................................................................... E1/AS1 4.2, Table 5

Downlights ................................................................................

Drainage system ....................................................................... G13/AS1 5.1.2, 5.5.2, 5.7.3, 5.7.4 b), G13/AS2 1.0.2, 3.1.1, 3.3.2, 4.1.1, 5.10.1
Drains ........................................................................................ NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2, G13.3.3, G15.3.3, B1/VM1 11.0.

access points ............................................................................ E1/AS1 3.1, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, 3.7.8
access chambers ................................................................. E1/VM1 5.0.1, E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12
inspection chambers ............................................................ E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11
inspection points .................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b)
rodding points ........................................................................ E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10
alignment ................................................................................ E1/AS1 3.3, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5

see also Drain, layout
bedding and backfilling ............................................................ E1/AS1 3.9.2, Figure 13; G13/AS2 5.2; Figure 7
alternative solutions ............................................................... E1/AS1 3.9.6
materials .................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.5, G13/AS2 Table 1
placing and compacting ....................................................... E1/AS1 3.9.6; G13/AS2 5.5
proximity to buildings .......................................................... E1/AS1 3.9.7, Figure 14;
trench slope ............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.3
trench width ............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.4
bends ........................................................................................ G13/AS2 3.1
bubble-up chamber system .................................................. E1/AS1 3.4.2, Figures 6 and 7
connections ............................................................................. G13/AS2 3.2.1, Figure 1
construction ............................................................................ G13/AS2 5.2, Figure 7
diameter

see Drains, sizing
disused drains ........................................................................... G13/AS2 5.10
downstream water systems ..................................................... E1/VM1 4.3
drain vent pipes ........................................................................ G13/AS2 Figure 3, Table 3
drains under buildings .............................................................. E1/AS1 3.7.6 to 3.7.8
gradient .................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.3.1, 3.7.3 b); G13/AS1 Table 5, G13/AS2 3.5, Table 2
minimum gradient ................................................................... E1/AS1 3.4, Table 2
installation ................................................................................ G13/AS2 5.0, 5.5
joints .......................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.5, Table 3; G13/AS2 5.1
junctions .................................................................................... G13/AS2 3.2
layout ........................................................................................ G13/AS2 3.3.1, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5
leakage tests .............................................................................. E1/VM1 8.0, E1/AS1 3.8
high pressure air test ............................................................... E1/VM1 8.3
low pressure air test ................................................................. E1/VM1 8.2
water test ................................................................................ E1/VM1 8.1

maintenance access

see Maintenance access to drains
materials .................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.1, Table 1; G13/AS2 2.0, Table 1
open water, upstream of site .................................................... E1/VM1 4.2
pipe water, upstream of site .................................................... E1/VM1 4.1
quantity ................................................................................... E1/VM1 4.1.10
tailwater depth ...................................................................... E1/VM1 4.1.6, 4.1.7
proximity to buildings .............................................................. G13/AS2 5.6, Figure 8
secondary flow ........................................................................ E1/VM1 4.0, 4.1.11 E1/AS1 1.0.1 d

downstream drainage ............................................................... E1/VM1 4.3
headwater depth ...................................................................... E1/VM1 4.1.4, 4.1.5, 4.1.8, 4.1.9, Figures 5 to 7, 10 and 11
Drains (continued)

- site - outfall protection .................................................................................................... E1/VM1 7.0
- sizing ............................................................................................................................... E1/VM1 3.0, E1/AS1 3.2, Figure 3; G13/AS2 3.6, Table 2
- energy losses .................................................................................................................. E1/VM1 5.0
- hydraulic design of drains ........................................................................................... E1/VM1 1.0.4, 3.2, Figures 6 and 7
- air entrainment .............................................................................................................. E1/VM1 3.2.4
- headwater depth ........................................................................................................... E1/VM1 3.2.2, Figure 5 a)
- minimum size ................................................................................................................ E1/VM1 3.1
- minimum velocity ......................................................................................................... E1/VM1 6.0
- pipe size decrease ..................................................................................................... E1/VM1 5.0.2
- soak pits ....................................................................................................................... E1/VM1 9.0, Figure 13
- sumps ............................................................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.6.1, 3.6.2, Figures 8 and 9
- surface water inlets ..................................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.6
- under buildings ............................................................................................................ E1/AS1 3.7.6; G13/AS2 5.8, 5.9, Figure 13
- upstream water systems .............................................................................................. E1/VM1 4.1, 4.2
- ventilation ..................................................................................................................... G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
- watertightness ............................................................................................................. G13/AS2 6.1.1

Draught diverters ........................................................................................................... G4/AS1 2.3.2

Drinking fountains ........................................................................................................ G13/AS1 Table 2

Durability ........................................................................................................................ B2; B2/VM1 1.0, B2/AS1 1.2, Figure 1
- code compliance certificate ............................................................................................ NZBC/B2.3
- ease of access and replacement .................................................................................... B2/AS1 1.2.1
- evaluation ..................................................................................................................... B2/VM1 1.0, B2/AS1 1.2, Figure 1
- examples of requirement ................................................................................................ B2/AS1 1.3.1, Table 1
- generic materials .......................................................................................................... B2/AS1 3.0
- in service history .......................................................................................................... B2/VM1 1.1
- laboratory testing ......................................................................................................... B2/VM1 1.2
- similar materials .......................................................................................................... B2/VM1 1.3
- intended life .................................................................................................................. NZBC/B1.3.1, B2.1, B2.3
- 5 year durability .......................................................................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
- 15 year durability .......................................................................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
- 50 year durability .......................................................................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
- maintenance ................................................................................................................ B2/AS1 2.0
- normal ........................................................................................................................... B2/AS1 2.1
- scheduled ...................................................................................................................... B2/AS1 2.2
- specified intended life ................................................................................................. NZBC/B2.3
- timber ............................................................................................................................. B2/AS1 3.2

Dynamic loads

see Structure, loads
E

Early childhood centres.................. NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.2, G7.2, G12.3.4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1; G5/AS1 1.0.3

see also Communal non-residential buildings

Amend 11
Sep 2010
Earth buildings ............................................................... B2/AS1 3.4, E2/AS2 1.0
Earth pressure
see Structure, loads
Earth retaining structures .................................................. B1/VM4 2.0.3
Earthquakes
see Structure, loads

Amend 12
Oct 2011
Ease of access and replacement.............................................. B2/AS1 1.2.1
Effluents............................................................................... B1/VM4 A1.2.1 f)
EIFS............................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9
battens ............................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.5
coating ................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.6
decorative mouldings ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.6.4
finish coats ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.6.3
reinforcing ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.6.1
reinforcing base coat ...................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.6.2
EIFS/floor slab junction.................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.7, Figure 125
general .............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.2
installation ......................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4, Table 23
fixing blocks ....................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.4
fixings ................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.4.1, Table 24
joints ................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.2
movement control joints ................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.4.3, Figure 124

Amend 12
Oct 2011
limitations ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.1
materials ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.3
fibreglass reinforcing mesh .............................................. E2/AS1 9.9.3.2
polystyrene sheet ............................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.3.1
parapets and enclosed balustrades .................................. E2/AS1 9.9.10
EIFS topped enclosed balustrades .................................. E2/AS1 9.9.10.2, Figure 129
flush-finished balustrade top ........................................... E2/AS1 9.9.10.1, Figures 129 and 130
metal cappings ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.10.2, Figures 12, 13 and 130
pipes and service penetrations ........................................ E2/AS1 9.9.8, Figure 126
windows and doors ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.9, Figures 17c, 127 and 128

Amend 12
Oct 2011
Electrical codes of practice.............................................. G9/VM1 1.0.1, G9/AS1 1.0.1

Electricity .......................................................... NZBC/G9.1, G9.2, G9.3.1 to G9.3.3; G9/VM1 1.0
domestic cooking and refrigeration ............................... G3/AS1 1.4.1
laundries ........................................................................ G2/AS1 1.1.2
electromechanical stress ............................................. NZBC/G9.3.1 (d)
esential services ......................................................... NZBC/G9.3.2
external supply system ................................................. NZBC/G9.3.3
a person with a disability ............................................ NZBC/G9.3.4
light switches .............................................................. G9/AS1 2.0.1 a) b)
socket outlets .............................................................. G9/AS1 2.0.1 c)
temperature ................................................................... NZBC/G9.3.1 (c) (d)

Emergency lighting
see Lighting for Emergency
Enclosed balustrades .......................................................... E2/AS1 7.4, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8, 9.7.7, 9.8.7, 9.9.10, Figures 110 and 102, Table 3
balustrade-to-deck floor junction .................................. E2/AS1 7.4.3, Figures 18 and 62
balustrade-to-wall junctions .................................................. E2/AS1 7.4.2, Figures 11-12
deck drainage ........................................................................ E2/AS1 7.4.1
EIFS-topped ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.10, Figure 129
flush-finished topped balustrades ................................... E2/AS1 9.7.7.1, Figure 117
metal cappings ....................................................................... E2/AS1 7.4.4, Table 7, Figure 5
stanchions ........................................................................ E2/AS1 7.4.5, Figure 19

Enclosing rectangles .......................................................... C/AS1 7.3.6, 7.5, 7.6
building on sloping sites and
buildings of irregular height ........................................... C/AS1 7.5.9, 7.5.10, Figure 7.7
exceptions for SH, SR and SA buildings ........................... C/AS1 7.5.7, 7.5.8, Figure 7.7
Method 2............................................................................ C/AS1 7.3.4 a), 7.3.6 to 7.3.8,
7.3.12, 7.5, Figures 7.5 to 7.7, Table 7.2
Method 3............................................................................ C/AS1 7.3.4 b), 7.3.12, 7.6, Figure 7.8
Method 4............................................................................ C/AS1 7.3.4 c), 7.3.9, 7.7, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4

Energy cut-offs ..................................................................... G12/AS1 6.4.1 c), 6.5.2

Energy Efficiency

building performance index (BPI) ....................................... NZBC/H1.3.2; H1/VM1 1.2
heat gain ................................................................................. NZBC/H1.3.3 (d) (f); H1/AS1 4.0
heat loss ............................................................................... NZBC/H1.3.4
heating ................................................................................. NZBC/H1.3.2
indoor temperature and humidity ....................................... NZBC/H1.2 (a), H1.3.1

Energy efficiency provisions
airflow control ..................................................................... H1/AS1 3.0
artificial lighting ................................................................. H1/VM1 1.3.1, H1/AS1 1.0.4, 6.1.1
building performance index ............................................... H1/VM1 1.2, 1.2.1
hot water systems ............................................................... H1/AS1 5.0.1
internal moisture ................................................................. H1/VM1 1.2.1, H1/AS1 2.1.4
solar heat gain ..................................................................... H1/AS1 4.0

Entrances
principal ............................................................................. D1/AS1 1.1.1

Environment
see Interior Environment

Escalators
see Mechanical Installations for Access

Escape height ................................................................. C/AS1 2.2.9 a), 3.3.4, 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6,3.15.7 a), 3.18.1, 4.5.10 b), 5.3.3 c), 7.10.3 Comment 7.9.10, Figure 3.20, Table 4.1
Escape routes ................................................................. NZBC/F6.2, F6.3.2, F6.8 (a), F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1 3.1 to 3.4, 3.6.1, 3.7.1, 3.9.12 to 3.9.14, 3.11.4, 3.17.3, 3.17.5, 4.5.7, Figures 3.1 to 3.5, Tables 3.1 and 3.2; D1/AS1 1.1.5, F8/AS1 3.0

see also Means of Escape
accessible ........................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.7, 3.17.5 a)
doors subdividing escape routes ........................................... C/AS1 3.17
exitways ............................................................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 a), 3.11, 3.12, 6.9.1, 6.16.7, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figures 3.3 and 3.20, Tables 2.1.6 to 6.3
external exitways ............................................................... C/AS1 3.16.4, 5.6.3 c), 7.9.1, 7.9.3
lighting ................................................................................ C/AS1 3.19.1
lighting for emergency
see Fire safety precautions
pressurisation
see Fire safety precautions
Escape routes; exitways (continued)

- split level exitways .................................................. C/AS1 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
- ventilation of enclosed exitways ................................................. C/AS1 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
- external ................................................................. C/AS1 3.14
- handrails ................................................................. C/AS1 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.6, 6.20.4 c)
- height and width of escape routes ............................................ C/AS1 3.3
- height ........................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.1
- width ........................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 to 3.3.5, 3.9.4 to 3.9.6, 3.9.12 e), 3.17.5,
  Figures 3.3, 3.4 and 3.8, Tables 3.2 and 3.4
- length of escape routes .................................................. C/AS1 3.4, 3.5, 3.11.7, 6.13.1,
  Figures 3.7, 3.9 and 3.10, Table 3.3
- measurement of travel distance ........................................... F6/AS1 Appendix D
- number of escape routes ................................................ C/AS1 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1
- obstructions ............................................................... C/AS1 3.3.6, 3.4.2 c), 3.17.5 a) e), 3.18.3
- access control systems .................................................. C/AS1 3.17.7
- chains ................................................................................. C/AS1 3.6
- crowd control barriers ................................................... C/AS1 3.6
- sliding bars ........................................................................ C/AS1 3.6
- turnstiles ............................................................................. C/AS1 3.6
- open paths ................................................................. C/AS1 2.2.8, 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.1.5, 3.1.2 f),
  3.3.7, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.8, 3.9, 3.17.3 a),
  3.17.5 a), A2.1.1 Type 16, Figures 3.1, 3.7,
  3.9, 3.12 and 3.16, Table 3.3
- dead end open paths ...................................................... C/AS1 1.3.4 Step 2, 3.3.2 b),
  3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.10, 3.14.4, Table 3.3
- increases in open path lengths .......................................... C/AS1 3.5
- intermediate floors ............................................................ C/AS1 3.3.2 f), 3.4.1 a),
  3.4.6, 3.9.13, Figure 3.9
- length ............................................................................. C/AS1 3.4 Step 2, 2.2.8, 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.4, 3.4.6 to 3.4.8,
  3.5, 3.15.1, Figures 3.7 and 3.9, Table 3.3
- number of open paths ...................................................... C/AS1 3.8.1
- ramps ................................................................................. C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.9.2, 3.14.7
- separation of open paths ...................................................... C/AS1 3.8.3, Figure 3.12
- size of open paths ............................................................. C/AS1 3.8.1
- sloping floors and ceilings ...................................................... C/AS1 3.4.8 a)
- special cases ........................................................................ C/AS1 3.9
- ladders .............................................................................. C/AS1 3.9.4 to 3.9.9, Figure 3.15
- exception for education buildings ........................................ C/AS1 3.8.4
- fixed seating ................................................................. C/AS1 3.9.3, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Table 3.4
- ladders .............................................................................. C/AS1 3.10.2
- long corridors ................................................................. C/AS1 6.13, Figure 6.5
- loose seating .................................................................... C/AS1 3.9.10, 3.9.11
- separate tenancies ............................................................. C/AS1 3.9.1
- subdivision ........................................................................ C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- unenclosed stairs ............................................................... C/AS1 3.9.14
- protected paths ................................................................. C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.7.1 a), 3.9.12, 3.9.13, 3.11.1, 3.11.2,
  3.15.3 b), 3.16.3, 6.9.1, 6.9.6 a), 6.10.4 a),
  6.11.3 b), Figures 3.1, 3.7, 3.8, 3.11, 3.19,
  3.28 and 3.30, Tables 2.1 and 6.1
- floor area ................................................................. C/AS1 3.4.3, 3.4.5
- length .............................................................................. C/AS1 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.4, 6.13.1 a), Table 3.3
- subdivision ........................................................................... C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- safe paths ................................................................. C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.4.1 b), 3.7.1, 3.9.14, 3.11.4 to 3.11.6, 3.11.9,
  3.14.1, 3.15.3 b), 3.15.6, 3.15.8 a), 3.16.1,3.16.6, 3.16.8,
  3.16.9, 6.9.2 to 6.9.4, 6.10.4 a), 6.22.2 d), 7.2.1 b), 7.7.1,
  A2.1.1 Type 13 Type 19, Figures 3.1, 3.8, 3.16, 3.19, 3.21,
  3.22, 3.24, 3.29 to 3.31 and 5.1, Tables 2.1, 6.1 and 7.4
- glazing ................................................................................ C/AS1 5.8, Figure 5.1
- horizontal safe paths ...................................................... C/AS1 3.11.6 a), 3.11.7, 3.11.8, 3.17.9 b), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.8
- length restrictions ............................................................... C/AS1 3.11.7, 3.15.5 c)
- permitted activities ............................................................. C/AS1 3.12.2
- subdivision ........................................................................... C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- vertical safe paths ............................................................... C/AS1 3.11.6 b), 3.11.7, 3.12.3, 3.13.13, 3.16.3,
  3.17.9 b), 3.17.12 a), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.7, 6.9.11,
  A2.1.1 Type 14, Figure 6.1

- subdivision ........................................................................... C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
Escape routes (continued)

- signs................................................................. C/AS1 3.20
- single escape routes.............................................. C/AS1 3.15
  - active purpose groups........................................ C/AS1 3.15.3, 3.15.4
  - basements ......................................................... C/AS1 3.15.2, Figure 3.19
  - bridges .......................................................... C/AS1 3.15.7, Figure 3.23
  - external balconies ............................................. C/AS1 3.15.7, Figure 3.22
  - external stairways ........................................... C/AS1 3.15.7
  - intermediate floors.......................................... C/AS1 6.22.2 c)
  - internal stairs .................................................. C/AS1 3.15.6, Figure 3.21
  - sleeping purpose groups.................................. C/AS1 3.15.5, Figure 3.21
  - split level exitways........................................... C/AS1 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
  - stairs ........................................................ C/AS1 3.15.6, 3.15.7, Figures 3.21 to 3.23
- surface finishes................................................ C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 6.2

- Equipotential bonding ...................................... G12/AS1 9.0
- earth bonding conductors.................................. G12/AS1 9.3
- installation of conductors................................... G12/AS1 9.2
- metallic sanitary fixtures .................................. G12/AS1 9.2.2, Figure 20
- metallic water supply pipes ................................ G12/AS1 9.2.1, Figure 19

- Escape through adjacent firecell ....................... C/AS1 3.9.12, Figure 3.16
- Escape through adjoining building .................... C/AS1 3.6, Figure 3.11

- Evacuation time............................................... NZBC/F6.3.1

- Exitways......................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.5 c), 1.5.2, F8/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.3
- pressurisation.................................................... F7/AS1 1.3.7

- Explosion
  - see Structure, loads, and Hazardous Substances and Processes

- Explosives
  - see also Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 1 Explosives

- External Moisture .............................................. E2
  - concealed spaces........................................... NZBC/E2.3.5
  - concrete and concrete masonry buildings .......... E2/AS3 1.0
  - elements in contact with the ground.................. NZBC/E2.3.3
  - external walls............................................... NZBC/E2.3.2
  - moisture present at completion of construction .... NZBC/E2.3.6
  - qualifications ............................................... E2/AS1 1.5, 8.2.2, 8.3.2, 8.4.2, 8.5.2, 9.2.3,
  - 9.3.4.1, 9.4.3, 9.5.3, 9.6.2, 9.7.2.1, 9.8.3, 9.9.2
  - roofs .......................................................... NZBC/E2.3.1, E2.3.2
  - scope ........................................................ E2/VM1 1.2, E2/AS1 1.0
  - construction excluded .................................... E2/AS1 1.2
  - acoustics ..................................................... E2/AS1 1.2.3
  - commercial and industrial roofing.................... E2/VM1 3.0
  - outbuildings.................................................. E2/AS1 1.2.1
  - skillion roofs ............................................... E2/VM1 3.0
  - spread of flame .............................................. E2/AS1 1.2.2
  - attached garages .......................................... E2/AS1 1.1
  - construction included .................................... E2/AS1 1.1
  - provisions for snow ....................................... E2/AS1 1.3
  - qualifications ............................................... E2/AS1 1.5
  - specific design............................................. E2/AS1 1.4
  - windows and doors ........................................ E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
  - snow ......................................................... NZBC/E2.3.1
  - suspended floors .......................................... NZBC/E2.3.4
External Moisture (continued)

Verification Method ....................................................... E2/VM1 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, Appendix 1
commercial and industrial roofing...................................................... E2/VM1 3.0
general ..................................................................................... E2/VM1 1.1
pitched roofing systems .............................................................. E2/VM1 2.0
pro-forma for test details .......................................................... E2/VM1 1.6, Appendix 1
scope ...................................................................................... E2/VM1 1.2
skillion roofs ............................................................................. E2/VM1 1.4
specimen details ......................................................................... E2/VM1 1.3
test procedure ........................................................................... E2/VM1 1.4
preconditioning ........................................................................... E2/VM1 1.4.1
Series 1 Cyclic Pressure Water Penetration ................................ E2/VM1 1.4.3
Series 1 Static Pressure Water Penetration ................................ E2/VM1 1.4.2
Series 2 ‘Water Management Testing’ ........................................... E2/VM1 1.4.4
Series 3 ‘Wetwall Test’ ............................................................. E2/VM1 1.4.5
transition period ......................................................................... E2/VM1 1.5

External walls ................................................................. C/AS1 3.14.3, 3.14.5, 3.14.6, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 6.12.7, 7.1.1,
7.3, 7.4.1, 7.5 to 7.7, 7.8.7, 7.9.7, 7.9.10, 7.9.11, 7.10,
7.11.2, Figures 6.11, 6.12, 7.1, 7.3 and 7.11, Table 7.5
cladding ....................................................................... C/AS1 7.9.18, 7.11.2, 7.11.3, C9.1, Table 7.5
fire resistance ratings ......................................................... C/AS1 3.14.5, 3.14.6, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 7.3.10, 7.4.3,
7.8.3 to 7.8.5, 7.8.10 c), 7.9.9, 7.9.13, 7.10
firecell separation ...................................................... C/AS1 7.3.7, 7.8 to 7.10, Figures 7.1 to 7.12, Tables 7.1 to 7.4
glazing ................................................................. C/AS1 7.3.3 c), 7.3.6 to 7.3.7, 7.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
return walls ......................................................... C/AS1 7.3.3 e), 7.3.9, 7.7, 7.10.4, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4
surface finishes ................................................................. C/AS1 7.1.2 c), 7.11.2 to 7.11.3
wing walls .............................................................. C/AS1 7.3.3 d), 7.3.9, 7.7, 7.10.4, Tables 7.3 and 7.4
F

F rating
see Fire resistance ratings

Factories
see Industrial buildings

Falsework
see Structure

Farm buildings
see Buildings, farm buildings

Fascias
see Gutters, barges and fascias

FHC
see Fire hazard category

FI
see Flammability index

Fibre cement sheet ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.6.2, 9.7

decorative attachments ...................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.8
flush-finished systems ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.4, Figures 111-114
control joints ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.7.4.1, Table 19, Figure 111
finishes ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.7.4.2

jointed systems .............................................................. E2/AS1 9.7.3, Figures 104A-108
paint finish ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.3.1

limitations ....................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.1

material and installation ................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.2
installation ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.2 1, Tables 23 and 24
parapets and enclosed balustrades ..................................... E2/AS1 9.7.7
flush-finished topped balustrades .................................... E2/AS1 9.7.7.1, Figure 117
soffit details .................................................................. E2/AS1 9.7.5, Figures 8A and 114
windows and doors ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.6, Figures 115 and 116

Fibre cement weatherboards ............................................ E2/AS1 9.5
installation ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.3, Table 23
external corners .............................................................. E2/AS1 9.5.3.3, Figure 88
fixings .............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.5.3.1, Table 24
internal corners .............................................................. E2/AS1 9.5.3.4, Figure 89
laps and joints .............................................................. E2/AS1 9.5.3.2, Figure 87

limitations ....................................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.1

material performance ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.2
parapets and enclosed balustrades ..................................... E2/AS1 9.5.5
protective coating .......................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.6
windows and doors ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.4
windows – direct fixed .................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.4.1, Figures 17D and 90
windows – on cavity ...................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.4.2, Figures 17C and 91

Filters
see Strainers

Final exits ....................................... C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.1.4.5, 3.16.4, 3.17.1 c), 3.18.1, 6.20.18 a), Figures 3.1, 3.2, 3.12, 3.19, 3.24 and 3.31, Table 6.1; F8/AS1 3.1.1 a) b), 3.2.3 a)
Fire alarm systems
  see Fire safety precautions

Fire engineering design .......................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.7, 1.4.1

Fire fighting facilities .......................................................... C/AS1 8.2

Fire resistance ratings (FRR) ................................................ C/AS1 1.3.2 Step 3, 2.2.1, 3.12.2 dl, 3.12.3, 3.15.2 b),
  3.15.3 a), 4.2.3, 5.4.1 f), j, 6.6.7, 6.20.7, 6.20.15 a),
  6.21.5 a), 6.22.1, 7.1.3, 7.3.2 b), 7.5.2, 7.5.3 Step 4,
  7.7.5 Step 5, 7.8.1, 7.8.2, 7.8.9 c) d), 7.10.5 a),
  Figures 3.19, 3.20, 1 and 7.10 Note 3,

Tables 2.1, 5.1, 7.1 to 7.4

category 4 buildings ......................................................... C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13, 7.8.1, 7.8.2, Table 2.1

Fire load energy density (FLED) ........................................ C/AS1 2.2.1 comments, 2.2.10, Table 5

Fire resistance ratings (FRR) ................................................ C/AS1 1.3.2 Step 8, 1.3.4 Steps 4 and 6,
  1.3.5 b), 3.6.1 c), 3.14.6 c), 3.16.6, 4.1.2, 4.3.2, 5.1, 5.2,
  5.9.5 a) b), 5.9.6, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6.1, 6.6.2, 6.6.5 to 6.6.7,
  6.7.1, 6.7.2, 6.7.5, 6.7.6, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1,
  6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.14, 6.15,
  6.16.2, 6.17.2, 6.18.8, 6.19.14, 7.2.1, 7.4.3, 7.8.1 a),
  7.8.2 to 7.8.6, 7.8.10 b) c), 7.9.3, 7.9.4, 7.9.8 b),
  7.9.13, 7.10, C7.1.1, Figure 7.10, Table 6.1

application of F and S ratings .............................................. C/AS1 5.3

applying FRRs to building elements ....................................... C/AS1 5.7

concessions for multiple purpose groups ............................... C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8
determining F and S ratings ................................................ C/AS1 5.4, 5.5
determining the FRR ............................................................. C/AS1 5.6

fire resistance tests ............................................................. C/AS1 5.9.6, C7.1.1

firecell rating (F) ................................................................. C/AS1 3.16.6, 4.1.2, 4.3.2, 4.4.1 Step 5, 4.5.7, 4.5.14, 5.2.2,
  5.3.1, 5.4, 5.5.1, 5.6.5, 5.6.9 a), 6.15.1, 6.16.2,
  6.16.5, 6.20.15, 7.2.1 a), 7.10.2, 7.10.3, Table 4.1

firecells rated F0 ................................................................. C/AS1 6.2

floors ................................................................................. C/AS1 3.14.6 c), 4.3.2, 5.6.4 d), 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.14, 6.15, 7.8.6

insulation rating ................................................................. C/AS1 5.11 c), 5.6.4 to 5.6.6, 5.8.10, 6.19.13, 7.8.1 a), Table 6.1 Notes

integrity rating ................................................................. C/AS1 5.11 b), 5.6.6, 5.8.2, 7.4.3

intermediate floors ............................................................ C/AS1 4.5.16, 6.14.3

minimum FRRs ................................................................. C/AS1 5.7.9

open sided buildings .......................................................... C/AS1 7.8.10 b) c), Figure 7.10

reductions for sprinklered firecells ........................................ C/AS1 5.6.6

roofs ................................................................................. C/AS1 7.8.1, 7.9.3, 7.9.8 b), Figures 7.1 and 7.11

small buildings ..................................................................... C/AS1 7.10.5

stability rating ................................................................. C/AS1 5.11 a), 5.6.6, 5.9.4, 5.9.5

structural fire endurance rating (S) ........................................ C/AS1 2.2.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.3,
  5.2.2, 5.3.2, 5.4, 5.5.2, 5.5.3,
  5.6.5, 5.6.9 a), 6.11.6, 6.10.5, 7.2.1,
  7.4.3, 7.8.1 a), 7.8.5, 7.8.6, 7.10.2,
  7.10.5, 7.10.8, Table 5.1

Fire resisting closures .......................................................... C/AS1 6.18.9, 6.19, C7.1.1, C8.1.1, Table 6.1

access panels ...................................................................... C/AS1 6.19.12

fire curtains ....................................................................... C/AS1 6.19.9, 6.19.10

fire dampers ...................................................................... C/AS1 6.3.2 f), 6.16.4 d), 6.19.14

fire doors
  see Doors

fire shutters ....................................................................... C/AS1 6.19.15 to 6.19.17

lift landing doors
  see Doors

smoke control doors
  see Doors
Fire safety

**see Means of Escape, Outbreak of Fire, Spread of Fire, Structural Stability during Fire**

**Fire safety precautions (FSP) **

- **C/AS1 1.2.3, 1.3.2 Step 6, 2.3.1, 3.1.5, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.3.1, 4.4.1, 4.5, 5.6.8, 6.10.1, 6.11.1, Appendix A, Table 4.1**
- **C/AS1 3.5.4, 4.5.4**
- **A2.1**

**emergency electrical power supply**

- **(Type 17)**
- **C/AS1 6.23.1 d), 6.23.3, 6.23.4, A2.1**
- **emergency lighting (Type 16)**
- **C/AS1 3.19.2, 6.23.3 c), 6.23.4, A2.1**
- **emergency lighting in exitways**
- **F7/AS1 1.5.2**

**fire alarm systems**

- **activation of system**
- **F7/AS1 2.1.1**
- **automatic**
- **F7/AS1 1.1.3, 1.2.3 to 1.2.7**
- **heat detectors**
- **F7/AS1 1.2.3, 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.4, 1.3.5**
- **high sensitivity smoke detection**
- **F7/AS1 1.1.7**
- **installation and maintenance**
- **F7/AS1 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7, 1.3.1, 1.4.1, 1.5.3**

**manual (Type 2)**

- **C/AS1 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1**
- **F7/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2**

**means of communication with the Fire Service**

**see Alerting the Fire Service**

- **modified smoke detection**
- **F7/AS1 1.2.5 to 1.2.7**
- **requirements**
- **F7/AS1 2.1**
- **smoke detectors**
- **F7/AS1 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3**
- **substitution of smoke detectors by heat detectors**
- **F7/AS1 1.3.5**
- **fire hose reels (Type 14)**
- **C/AS1 8.2.2, A2.1**
- **fire hydrant systems (Type 18)**
- **C/AS1 8.2.1, A2.1**
- **Fire Service lift controls (Type 15)**
- **C/AS1 8.2.5, A2.1**
- **fire sprinklers (Type 6)**
- **C/AS1 3.9.12 f), 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 4.1.1 a), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 5.6.13, 6.3.2 a) d), 6.6.8, 6.16.7, 6.18.10, 6.19.9, A2.1, Appendix D, Figure 7.2**
- **concessions for sprinklers**
- **C/AS1 3.3.2 c), 3.4.8 d), 3.5.2, 3.14.3, 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 3.16.3 b), 4.2.5, 5.5.3, 5.6.6, 5.6.7 b), 5.6.8, 5.8.7, 5.8.8, 6.3.1, 6.3.1, 6.7.2, 6.9.6 d), 6.9.11, 6.10.5, 6.13.1, 6.20.5, 6.20.10, 6.20.15 a), 6.22.3 a), 7.2.2, 7.3.12, 7.7.6, 7.9.3, 7.9.10, 8.1.1 e), Tables 4.1 Note 5, 6.2**
- **residential**
- **C/AS1 D3.1**
- **with smoke detectors (Type 7)**
- **C/AS1 3.12.2 b), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g), A2.1**
- **fire sprinkler systems**
- **automatic**
- **F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.8, 1.3.2, 1.3.4**
- **fire systems centre (Type 20)**
- **C/AS1 8.2.3, 8.2.4, A2.1**
- **heat detectors (Type 3)**
- **C/AS1 3.5.3, 3.5.5, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.10.4 c), 6.11.3 b), A2.1**
- **hold-open devices**
- **C/AS1 1.3.6, 1.5.2**
- **manual (Type 2)**
- **C/AS1 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1**
- **mechanical smoke extract**
- **F7/AS1 1.3.8, 1.5.2**
- **mechanical smoke extract (Type 11)**
- **C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 c), 6.22.8 c), 6.22.11, 6.22.12, 6.22.14, A2.1, B3.1.1, Table 6.6**
- **modified smoke/heat detection (Type 5)**
- **C/AS1 3.5.4, A2.1**
- **natural smoke venting**
- **F7/AS1 1.3.8, 1.5.2**
- **natural smoke venting (Type 10)**
- **C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 b), 6.22.8 b) c), 6.22.10, 6.22.14, A2.1, B3.1.1, Table 6.6**
- **pressurisation of safe paths (Type 13)**
- **C/AS1 3.7.1 b), 3.11.6 b), 6.9.6, 6.9.11, 6.13.1, 6.19.4 c), 6.21.2, 6.23.1 b), A2.1, B1.1.1, Table 6.1 Note 2; F7/AS1 1.3.7, 1.5.2**
- **refuge areas (Type 19)**
- **C/AS1 3.13, A2.1, Figure 3.17**
Fire safety precautions (FSP) (continued)

smoke control in air-handling systems
(Type 9) ................................................................. C/AS1 6.23.2, A2.1; F7/AS1 1.5.2, 1.5.3
smoke detectors .......................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3
smoke detectors (Type 4) .................................................. C/AS1 3.5.4, 3.5.5, 3.12.2 b), 3.17.10, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g, j, 6.22.14, 6.23.1, A2.1, B1.1.1
voice communication system (Type 8) ................................. C/AS1 3.16.3 d), 8.2.6, A2.1

Fire separations .................................................. C/AS1 1.3.5 b), 3.11.9, 4.11 a), 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 d) e), 5.6.3, 5.6.4 a), 5.6.5 c), 5.6.7, 5.7.2, 5.7.4, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6, 6.7, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1, 6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1, 6.11.2, 6.12, 6.14.1, 6.14.4, 6.15.1 a), 6.17, 6.18.4, 6.18.7 to 6.18.10, 7.2.1, 7.2.2, Table 6.1
junctons ................................................................. C/AS1 6.12.4 to 6.12.7, 6.12.9, 6.18.4, Figure 6.4
protected shafts .................................................. C/AS1 6.16, Figure 6.8

Fire Service .......................................................... C/AS1 4.2.6 c), 5.9.3 f), 6.21.2, 6.22.12 b), Part 8, A2.1.1 Type 15 and Type 20; F7/AS1 1.2.2, 2.1.2 a), 2.2

see also Alerting the Fire Service
installation and maintenance ............................................ F7/AS1 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
manual ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2
means of communication with ........................................... C/AS1 A1.3.1, A2.1.1 Type 2 and Type 7
requirements .................................................................. F7/AS1 2.1
activation of system .................................................. C/AS1 7.9.6 to 7.9.9, Figure 7.11
roof car parking and storage ............................................. C/AS1 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17

Fire shutters
see Fire resisting closures

Fire spread
horizontal ................................................................. C/AS1 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 b), 7.3, 7.8
vertical ................................................................. C/AS1 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 a), 7.9
between different levels of the same building ...................... C/AS1 7.9.10 to 7.9.15
eexternal thermal insulation .............................................. C/AS1 7.9.18, 7.9.19, Figure 7.12
from an adjacent lower roof ............................................. C/AS1 7.9.6 to 7.9.9, Figure 7.11
roof car parking and storage ............................................. C/AS1 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17

Fire stopping .................................................. C/AS1 6.12.5, 6.12.7 a), 6.12.9, 6.17, 6.18.1, 6.18.4, C6.1.1, C6.1.2, 30 September 2010
Figures 6.4, 6.9 and 6.11

cavity barriers .......................................................... C/AS1 6.18.4, 6.18.6, Figure 6.12
curtain walls ............................................................. C/AS1 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
external thermal insulation .............................................. C/AS1 7.9.18, Figure 7.12
hollow construction .................................................. C/AS1 6.17.5, Figure 6.12
protected shafts .................................................. C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.16.3, 6.16.4 e), Figure 6.8
service outlets........................................................... C/AS1 6.17.6, Figure 6.9

Firecell rating (F)
see Fire resistance ratings

Firecells ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.7, 1.3.1, 1.3.4, 1.3.5
basements ................................................................. C/AS1 3, 4.5.15, 6.14.4
buildings remaining occupied during fire ......................... C/AS1 5.6.9, 5.6.10
car parking ............................................................. C/AS1 6.10.3 to 6.10.6
ceiling space firecells .................................................. C/AS1 6.12.8
concealed spaces .......................................................... C/AS1 6.18.2, 6.18.3
concessions for multiple purpose groups ......................... C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8
construction ................................................................. C/AS1 6.12
fire hazard category 4 .................................................. C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13

fire safety precautions
see Fire safety precautions
firecells rated F0 .......................................................... C/AS1 6.2
floor area limits ............................................................. C/AS1 4.2.3 to 4.2.5
group sleeping areas .................................................. C/AS1 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.5
intermediate floors .................................................. C/AS1 4.5.16 to 4.5.18, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3
to 6.21.6, Figure 6.6, Tables 6.5 and 6.6
Firecells (continued)
limited area atriums ........................................... C/AS1 6.22, Figure 6.14, Tables 6.4 to 6.6
plant, boiler and incinerator rooms ................................... C/AS1 6.11.3, 6.11.4
protected shafts ................................................................. C/AS1 6.16
provision of firecells .............................................................. C/AS1 4.2
roofs ........................................................................... C/AS1 7.8.1 to 7.8.5, 7.9.1 to 7.9.9
solid waste storage .................................................. C/AS1 6.10.2
suites ........................................................................ C/AS1 2.2.9, 3.15.5, 6.6.5, 6.7.6, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, A2.11.1 Type 5
top floor firecells ......................................................... C/AS1 4.5.14

Fireplace ........................................................................ C/AS1 9.1 to 9.3, Figures 9.1 and 9.3, Table 9.1

Fixtures
sanitary fixtures
see Personal Hygiene

Flame barriers ........................................... C/AS1 3.14.6 b) c), 6.18.5 c), 6.20.12 a), 6.20.13, 6.20.14 b),
C9.1, Table 6.3

Flammability index (FI) ................................................................. C/AS1 C3.1, Table 6.2

Flammable liquids
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 3 flammable liquids

Flammable solids
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 4 flammable solids

Fixings ........................................... E2/AS1 4.4, 8.1.4, 8.2.4, 8.3.7, 8.4.8, 8.4.8.1, 8.4.9, 8.4.9.1, 9.4.3.1,
9.4.4.3, 9.4.5.2, 9.5.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.7.3.1, 9.8.3.1, 9.9.4.1,
Tables 14, 15, 20-22, 24, Figures 39 and 40

Tables 14, 15, 20-22, 24, Figures 39 and 40
Index

Flats
see Housing, multi-unit dwelling

FLED
see Fire load energy density

Flooding
flood risk assessment .................................................. E1/VM1 3.2.2
history of ................................................................. E1/AS1 1.0.1
protection from ......................................................... E1/VM1 3.2.2

Floors
NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), D1.3.3 (e), D1.3.4 (e), E2.3.3, E2.3.4, G6.3.1, G6.3.2;
F7/AS1 1.1.2, G3/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3, 2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6

basement floors .................................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 ii, 3.15.2, 6.14.4, Figure 3.19
concealed spaces .................................................. C/AS1 6.18.4, 6.18.5 a), 6.18.10

fire resistance ratings ........................................ C/AS1 3.14.6 c), 4.1.1 a), 4.3.2, 4.5.7, 5.3.1, 5.6.4 d), 5.6.8, 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.12.2, 6.14.2 to 6.14.4, 6.15.1
floor projections .................................................. C/AS1 7.8.6, 7.9.13
flooring materials ................................................. C/AS1 6.20.8, 6.20.14
intermediate floors ............................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 ii, 3.4.6, 3.9.13, 4.5.16 to 4.5.18, 5.6.4 d), 6.18.5 a), 6.18.5 b), 6.18.10, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.23.3, 6.22, A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11, B4.1.1, Figures 3.9 and 6.6, Tables 6.4 to 6.6
limited area intermediate floors ................................ C/AS1 4.5.17, 6.21.4 a), 6.21.5, 6.21.6
lower floors ......................................................... C/AS1 3.16.9, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.7.7, 6.9.3, Figure 3.5
more than one purpose group on a floor ............ C/AS1 4.5.1 to 4.5.6, 5.6.11
other floors in a building ........................................ C/AS1 4.5.8 to 4.5.11
same purpose group on different floors .............. C/AS1 4.5.13
sloping floors and ceilings ...................................... C/AS1 3.4.8 a)
subfloor spaces ..................................................... C/AS1 6.15.1, 6.18.5 a), Figure 6.7
top floor firecells ................................................... C/AS1 4.5.14
upper floors ......................................................... C/AS1 3.15.3 b), 3.16.3 a), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 6.7.7, 6.8.2, 6.8.6, 7.5.7, Figure 3.5
wooden floors ..................................................... C/AS1 6.12.6, 6.20.14
floor/ceiling assemblies .......................................... G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 3
floor/wall junctions ............................................... G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 5
minimum floor level .............................................. E1/AS1 2.0, Figures 1 and 2
moisture ............................................................... NZBC/E2.3.4
slip resistant ......................................................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (d); G15/AS1 3.0.2

Floor outlets .......................................................... G13/AS1 3.4
Floor wastes .......................................................... E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2, Figure 4
Flues ............................................................... NZBC/G11.3.3; G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4; G11/AS1 5.0
fire damper .................................................. G11/AS1 5.3
gas burning appliances ........................................... G4/AS1 9.2
locations on dwellings ........................................... G11/AS1 5.1
materials ....................................................... G11/AS1 9.1
oil fired appliances ............................................ G11/AS1 5.2
safety devices .................................................. G11/AS1 9.3
solid fuel appliances ........................................... G11/AS1 5.2

Foamed plastics building materials ......................... C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.5 6.20.11 to 6.20.13, 7.9.18,
Figure 7.12, Table 6.3

Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination .. G3
cooking .................................................................. NZBC/G3.3.1 (c); G3/AS1 1.2.1, 1.4.1
energy supply ....................................................... NZBC/G3.3.3
location ................................................................... NZBC/G3.3.4
people with disabilities ........................................ NZBC/G3.3.5
preparation .............................................................. NZBC/G3.3.6
prevention of contamination ................................... G3/AS1 1.1.1
rinsing .................................................................... G3/AS1 1.3.1
storage .................................................................... G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.3.4
surfaces .................................................................... G3/AS1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, Figure 1
utensil washing ....................................................... G3/AS1 9.3.2

Foul Water ............................................................. G13
see also Discharge pipes, Drains, Sanitary appliances, Sanitary fixtures, Vent pipes,
Water seals, Water traps
gravity flow ............................................................ NZBC/G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2 (a)
odours ................................................................... NZBC/G13.1 (b), G13.3.1 (c), G13.3.2 (e); G13/AS1 3.1.1
offensive matter .................................................... NZBC/G13.1 (b)
on-site disposal systems .......................................... NZBC/G13.3.4
see also Industrial Liquid Waste
outfalls ...................................................................... NZBC/G13.2, 13.3.2
personal hygiene .................................................. NZBC/G13.1 (a)
plumbing system ................................................... NZBC/G13.2, 13.3.1
sewer ...................................................................... NZBC/G13.3.3, G13.4.3, G15.4.3
three storey buildings .......................................... G13/AS1 Figure 7

Foundations .......................................................... B1/VM4
see also Chimneys, foundations
design parameters
continuous vibration ............................................. B1/VM4 1.0.6
depth ..................................................................... B1/VM4 1.0.4
ground stability .................................................... B1/VM4 1.0.4
long-term loading .................................................. B1/VM4 2.0.6
short-term loading .................................................. B1/VM4 2.0.6
serviceability deformations .................................... B1/VM4 1.0.3, Appendix B
pile foundations .................................................... B1/VM4 4.0
belled piles ............................................................ B1/VM4 4.0.3 b), 5.1.2
bulbed piles ........................................................... B1/VM4 4.0.3 c)
concrete piles

cast-in-situ ............................................................ B1/VM4 3.4.4
precast ................................................................. B1/VM4 3.4.4, 5.1.1
downdrag ................................................................ B1/VM4 4.5
nominal width ....................................................... B1/VM4 4.0.3, 4.2.2, 4.6.1
notation ................................................................. B1/VM4 4.1.1, Table 2
pile driving ............................................................ B1/VM4 4.1.1
pile driving formula .............................................. B1/VM4 4.0.1
pile groups

design pile lateral strength .................................... B1/VM4 4.0.4
design pile vertical strength ................................... B1/VM4 4.0.4
ultimate lateral strength ....................................... B1/VM4 4.6.1, Table 3
ultimate vertical strength ...................................... B1/VM4 4.4.1
Foundations (continued)

single piles

- base resistance .......................................................... B1/VM4 4.1.3, Figures 3 and 4
- column action ............................................................... B1/VM4 4.2
- design pile lateral strength ............................................. B1/VM4 4.0.4
- design pile vertical strength ......................................... B1/VM4 4.0.4
- lateral strength .............................................................. B1/VM4 4.3
- drained cohesionless soil .............................................. B1/VM4 4.3.4
- free head pile ............................................................. B1/VM4 4.3.2 a), 4.3.3 a), 4.3.4 a)
- restrained head pile ...................................................... B1/VM4 4.3.2 b), 4.3.3 b), 4.3.4 b)
- undrained cohesive soil ................................................ B1/VM4 4.3.2
- undrained consolidated soil ........................................... B1/VM4 4.3.3
- shaft resistance .......................................................... B1/VM4 4.1.4, Figure 5, Table 2
- ultimate axial compression ............................................ B1/VM4 4.0.1 to 4.0.3
- vertical strength .......................................................... B1/VM4 4.1.2
- strength reduction factors .............................................. B1/VM4 4.7, Table 4

strength types

- concrete ................................................................. B1/VM4 5.1.1, 5.1.2
- steel ................................................................. B1/VM4 5.2.1, 5.2.2
- timber ................................................................. B1/VM4 5.3

shallow foundations .................................................. B1/VM4 3.0

- concrete slab-on-ground ............................................ B1/AS1 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, B1/AS3 1.3
- design bearing pressure .............................................. B1/VM4 3.2.1, 3.2.4
- design bearing strength ............................................... B1/VM4 3.2.3
- design sliding resistance ............................................. B1/VM4 3.4.6
- local shear ............................................................. B1/VM4 3.3.3
- moment loading ........................................................ B1/VM4 3.1.4
- notation ................................................................. B1/VM4 3.3.1, Figures 1 and 2
- soils ................................................................. B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3
- strength reduction factors ......................................... B1/VM4 3.5
- surcharge ............................................................. B1/VM4 3.1.3
- ultimate bearing strength .......................................... B1/VM4 3.1.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
- ultimate sliding resistance .......................................... B1/VM4 3.4.2
- ultimate sliding strength ........................................... B1/VM4 3.4.4, 3.4.5

see also Chimneys, foundations

FRR
- see Fire resistance ratings

FSP
- see Fire safety precautions
G

Garages
see Outbuildings

Gas
Motors and fans ................................................................. G3/AS1 1.4.1

Gas as an Energy Source
automated cut-offs .................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.2
fluid appliances .................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.3
Gas supply authority .................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.6
isolation devices .................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.4
meters .................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.6
over pressure protection .................................................................................. G11/AS1 5.0
safe pressure ranges .................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.1
service risers .................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.6
supply system .................................................................................. NZBC/G11.2, G11.3.1, G11.3.5

Gas burning appliances
installation .................................................................................. C/AS1 9.2
seismic restraint .................................................................................. C/AS1 9.2.2

Gases
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 2 gases

Gas fuel appliances .................................................................................. G4/AS1 2.0, 3.0

Gas reticulation
another Acceptable Solution .................................................................................. G10/AS1 5.0
cleaning .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.1
tailpipes .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.1.3
concealed piping .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.4
in concrete .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.4.1
in enclosed spaces .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.4.2
underground .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.4.3, Table 3
construction .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.0
corrosion control .................................................................................. G10/AS1 3.0
design .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.0.1 a)
installation .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.2
bends and offsets .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.2.1 b)
risers .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.2.1 c)
separation .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.2.1 d)
supports .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.2.1 a), Table 2
isolating valves .................................................................................. G10/AS1 2.0
materials .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.0.1 b), Table 1
pipework in ducts .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.5
unventilated ducts .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.5.4
ventilated ducts .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.5.3
vent lines .................................................................................. G10/AS1 4.0, Tables 4 and 5
welded joints .................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.3

Geology .................................................................................. B1/VM4 A1.2.1 a)

Glazing .................................................................................. NZBC/F2.3.3, B1/AS1 7.0, C/AS1 5.8, 6.19.11
see also Hazardous Building Materials
concession for sprinklers .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.7, 5.8.8
dimensions .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.3 to 5.8.5
fire resisting glazing .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 7.3.3 c), 7.3.5, 7.3.7, 7.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
human impact safety .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.2 a)
in external walls .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.10
in fire doors .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.10
in fire separations .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.1, 5.8.2
in smoke control doors .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.10, 5.8.11
in smoke separations and protected paths .................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.9
modifications to NZS 4223 .................................................................................. F2/AS1 1.2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Government agencies</td>
<td>NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Commercial buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government offices</td>
<td>NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Commercial buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grease traps</td>
<td>G13/AS2 3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capacity</td>
<td>G13/AS2 3.4.3, 3.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good ground</td>
<td>B1/AS2 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, B1/AS3 1.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground conditions</td>
<td>B1/VM4 1.0.2, Appendix A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groundwater</td>
<td>B1/VM4 1.0.2, Appendices A, B, G14/VM1 1.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conditions</td>
<td>B1/VM4 1.0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seasonal changes</td>
<td>B1/VM4 1.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidal changes</td>
<td>B1/VM4 1.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group sleeping areas</td>
<td>C/AS1 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gully traps</td>
<td>G13/AS1 Figures 5 and 7, G13/AS2 3.3, Figures 2 and 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>construction</td>
<td>G13/AS2 3.3.1, Figure 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overflow relief</td>
<td>G13/AS2 3.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pipe diameters</td>
<td>G13/AS2 3.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gutters</td>
<td>E1/AS1 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gradients</td>
<td>E1/AS1 5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>materials</td>
<td>E1/AS1 5.2, Table 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overflow outlets</td>
<td>E1/AS1 5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sizing</td>
<td>E1/AS1 5.1, Figures 15 and 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thermal movement</td>
<td>E1/AS1 5.4, Table 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gutters, barges, and fascias</td>
<td>E2/AS1 5.2, 8.1.6, 8.3.9, 8.4.14, 8.5.10, Figures 20 and 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal gutters</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parallel hidden gutters</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valley gutters</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figures 37 and 51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H

Habitable spaces............ NZBC/E3.3.1, G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.3, G6.2, G7.2; G6/AS1 1.0.2

Halls
see Communal non-residential

Halls of residence
see Communal residential

Handicapped people
see People with disabilities

Handrails ....................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (j) (k), D1.3.4 (ii); C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8;
6.20.4 c); D1/AS1 1.5.2, 1.5.4 b), 1.6.1, 1.7, 2.5.1 g), 6.0.1, 6.0.2, Figures 6 and 19

clearances .................................... D1/AS1 6.0.7, Figure 26
handrail profiles .................................. D1/AS1 6.0.7 to 6.0.9, Figure 26
height ........................................ D1/AS1 6.0.6, Figure 25
horizontal extensions .......................... D1/AS1 6.0.4, 6.0.5, Figure 25
intermediate handrails ........................ D1/AS1 6.0.2
relevant width ................................... D1/AS1 6.0.9, Figure 26
slope ........................................ D1/AS1 6.0.4

Hazards to building elements .................................................. F1/VM1 2.7

Hazardous Agents on Site ......................................................... F1
see also Site investigation
assessment of sites .......................................................... NZBC/F1.3.1
contaminants ........................................ F1/VM1 1.0.2 c, 2.1.2, 2.2.1 g), 2.2.2, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.6.2;
2.6.3, Table 2
degradation of building materials ............................... F1/VM1 2.7
likely effects on people ................................. NZBC/F1.3.2
hazardous agents .......................................... F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.5.5, Table 2
network utility operators ........................................ F1/VM1 2.1.1 f)
remedial work ........................................ F1/VM1 2.6, Table 3
risk assessment ........................................ F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.5, 2.5.4

Hazardous Building Materials .................................................. F2
see also Glazing
asbestos ............................................. F2/AS1 2.0
brittle materials ...................................................... NZBC/F2.3.3
harmful concentrations .................................... NZBC/F2.3.1
transparent panels ........................................ NZBC/F2.3.2

Hazard category
see Fire hazard categories

Hazardous Substances and Processes ........................................ F3
Class 1 ................................................. F3/VM1 1.0.2 c)
Class 2 ................................................. F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1
Class 3 ................................................. F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1
Class 4 ................................................. F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1
Class 5 ................................................. F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1
control of adverse effects of ignition...................... F3/VM1 3.1
control of ignition ........................................ F3/VM1 3.1
isolation distances ...................................... F3/VM1 3.2
methods of construction .................................. F3/VM1 3.2
other legislation ......................................... F3/VM1 1.0
scope ............................................... F3/VM1 2.0
secondary containment systems ....................... F3/VM1 3.3
security .............................................. F3/VM1 3.4
explosions ........................................... NZBC/F3.3 (c)
food preparation and utensil washing areas ........... NZBC/G3.3.2 (b)
hazardous substances associated with building services .............................................. NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
protected ignition sources ......................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (d)
release of pressure ................................................................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (c)
released during fire .................................................................................................. NZBC/C3.2 (d), C3.3.10
rendering hazardous materials harmless ................................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (e)
sewers and public drains ....................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (b)
signs ......................................................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (g)
surface finishes ....................................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (f)
unauthorised access ............................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (a)

Amend 11 Sep 2010

Hazardous wastes ......................................................... G14/VM1 1.4.1 b), 1.9.1, 2.1.4, 2.2.1 b), 2.2.4, 2.3.6, 2.4.4, 3.3
Health camps
see Communal residential

Hearth .......................................................... B1/AS3 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3, C/AS1 9.5, Figure 9.3
hearth slabs ................................................................. B1/AS3 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3

Heat detectors
see Fire safety precautions

Heat transfer solid fuel appliances
limiting heat transfer ................................................................................................. C/VM1 1.1

Heating
see Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment

Height
see Building height or Escape height

Height clearances .......................................................... D1/AS1 1.4, 1.4.1, Figure 3, Table 1
Hobs .......................................................................................................................... G3/AS1 1.2.1

Hospitals ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv); G1/AS1 9.1 Table 4
see also Communal residential

Hostels
see Communal residential

Amend 12 Oct 2011

Hot dip galvanising ............................................................ B1/AS3 1.8.6
Hot plates .................................................................................................................. G3/AS1 1.2.1
Hot water supply
see Water supplies, hot

Hotels ................................................................. D1/AS1 9.1.1
see also Communal residential

Household units ......................................................... C/AS1 1.3.5, 1.3.6 b) c) e), 2.2.9 a), 2.3.16.5, 3.15.8, 3.20.1, 6.1.1, 6.8.1, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.20.1, 7.5.7, 7.9.19, 7.10.6, 7.10.7, A2.1.1 Type 5, Table 6.2, F7/AS1 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.2, G6/AS1 1.2.2

Housing ................................................................. NZBC/A1 2.0, D1.3.3, E1.3.2, G1.3.5, G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G3.3.2 (c), G7.2, G12.3.4, G12.3.9, H1.3.2; F4/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1; G9/AS1 1.0; H1/VM1 1.0, 1.2, H1/AS1 1.0, 2.0

detached dwellings .................................................. NZBC/A1 2.0.2, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F7.3, F8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1 1.2

group dwellings ...................................................... NZBC/A1 2.0.4, G8.2; H1/VM1 1.1.2

multi-unit dwellings .................................................. NZBC/A1 2.0.3, C3.3.2, D1.3.2 (ii), F6.2, F8.2, G8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1 1.1.1, 1.2, H1/AS1 2.1.2

Amend 11 Sep 2010

HVAC systems ........................................................................................................ F7/AS1 1.5.3
Identification of non-potable water supply .......................................................... G12/AS1 4.2.1
see also Water supplies

Illuminance ......................................................................................................... G7/VM1 1.0; G8/VM1 1.0, G8/AS1 1.0
measurement ...................................................................................................... G8/VM1 1.0.1
minimum ............................................................................................................. G6/VM1 1.0.3

Impact insulation class (IIC) ................................................................................ G6/VM1 2.0

In-service history .................................................................................................. B2/VM1 1.1

Industrial buildings ......................................................................................... NZBC/A1 6.0, D1.3.2 (h), D1.3.3, E3.3.1, G1.3.5, G3.2.1,
G3.3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b), G3.3.6, G8.2, G9.3.4, G12.3.9,
H1.2 (a); G1/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 2.0; H1/AS1 1.0.2

Industrial Liquid Waste ...................................................................................... G14
capacity ................................................................................................................ NZBC/G14.3.2 (a)
collection .......................................................................................................... G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.4
location of facilities ........................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.4
corrosion .......................................................................................................... G14/VM1 1.5.1, 1.5.2
disposal ............................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 a), G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2
to a sewer ....................................................................................................... G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
to a sewer ....................................................................................................... G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
to a sewer ....................................................................................................... G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
thrust ................................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)

Industry types .................................................................................................... NZBC/G14.3.1 (c), G14.3.2 (f)

Fire resistance ratings ........................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.3.2

storage ............................................................................................................... G14/VM1 1.7.1

containers ............................................................................................................. G14/VM1 1.4.1

location of facilities ........................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.4.2

tanks see Tanks

treatment ........................................................................................................... G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.2, 1.2.2, 1.4, Figure 1, Table 1

unauthorised access ......................................................................................... NZBC/G14.3.2 (g)

vehicle access .................................................................................................. NZBC/G14.3.2 (b)

Inspection chambers see Maintenance access to drains

Inspection points see Maintenance access to drains

Insulation see Fire resistance ratings

Integrity see Fire resistance ratings

Intellectually handicapped persons see People with disabilities
Internal Moisture

see Floors

Intended Life
see Durability

Intended use ........................................... G3/AS1 1.6, 2.2

Interface with ancillary control systems ......................................................... F7/AS1 1.5

Interior Environment

see also Activity space

see Artificial Light

see Enhanced listening systems .................................................. NZBC/G5.5.5, G5.6

see also Indoor temperature .................................................. NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1;
G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2

see also Activity space

Intermediate floors

see Floors

see Activity space

see also Durability

see also Enhanced listening systems .................................................. NZBC/G5.5.5, G5.6

see also Indoor temperature .................................................. NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1;
G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2

see also Indoor temperature .................................................. NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1;
G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2

see Artificial Light

see also Activity space

see Enhanced listening systems .................................................. NZBC/G5.5.5, G5.6

see also Indoor temperature .................................................. NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1;
G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2
Isolating valves .......................................................................................... G12/AS1 3.7.1, 5.4.2

Jetties
see Ancillary buildings

Kerbs ........................................................................................................ D1/AS1 1.5.4 a), Figure 6
see also Ramps

Kindergartens
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential

Kitchens
see Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination

Kitchen sinks ....................................................................................... G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2, Table 2

Laboratory testing .................................................................................. B2/VM1 1.2

Ladders ..................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.0
see also Stairs and ladders
height..................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.2, 5.1.7
individual rung-type ladders ................................................................ D1/AS1 5.1.1 c), 5.4, Figure 24
clearance ............................................................................................. D1/AS1 5.4.1 c)
height ..................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 c)
rungs .................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 a)
tread width ......................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 b)
width .................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 b)
landings .............................................................................................. D1/AS1 5.3.2
length.................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.5, 5.1.7
width................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.4
location .............................................................................................. D1/AS1 5.1.3
rung spacing ...................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.6
rung-type ladders .............................................................................. D1/AS1 5.1.1 b), 5.3, Figure 20
clearances.......................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 e)
height .................................................................................................. D1/AS1 5.3.1 d)
landings ............................................................................................ D1/AS1 6.3.2, Figure 23
rungs ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 5.3.1 b)
slope ................................................................................................ D1/AS1 5.3.1 a)
width................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 c)
safety enclosures ............................................................................. D1/AS1 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22
step-type ladders ................................................................................ D1/AS1 5.1.1 a), 5.2, 5.2.1, Figure 19
clearances.......................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 e)
height ................................................................................................ D1/AS1 5.2.1 d)
horizontal openings ........................................................................ D1/AS1 5.2.1 f)
slope ................................................................................................ D1/AS1 5.2.1 a)
treads ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 5.2.1 b)
width................................................................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 c)
types of ladders ............................................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.1

Landings .............................................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.2 (l) (m), D1.3.4 (l)
Landslip ............................................................................................... B1/VM4 A1.2.1 a)
Laundering .................................................. G2; NZBC/G2.2, G2.3.1 to G2.3.4; G2/AS1 1.0
   electricity supply ................................................. G2/AS1 1.1.2
   laundry tubs ................................................. E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3, G2/AS1 1.0.1 a), 1.0.2, 1.1.1;
   another Acceptable Solution .......................................................... G2/AS1 1.0.3
   size ................................................................. G2/AS1 1.0.2 a)
   capacity ................................................................. G2/AS1 1.0.2 b)
   number of facilities ......................................................... G2/AS1 1.2.1, Figure 1
   overflow ............................................................. NZBC/E3.3.2
   people with disabilities ........................................ NZBC/G2.3.4, G2/AS1 1.2.2, Figure 2
   washing machines ................................................. G2/AS1 1.0.1 b), 1.1.2
   water supply ................................................................. G2/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2

Lavatories  
   see Personal Hygiene


   Level access routes .................................................. D1/AS1 2.0
   protection from falling .................................................. D1/AS1 2.3
   slip resistance ............................................................. D1/AS1 2.1, Table 2
   width .......................................................................... D1/AS1 2.2

Libraries  
   see Communal non-residential

   Lifts .............................................................. C/AS1 3.12.3, 6.16.1, 6.16.4 b) c), 6.23.3 b) ; D1/AS1 12.0  
   see also Mechanical Installations for Access
   doors ................................................................. C/AS1 6.19.13, Table 6.1
   Fire Service lift control .................................................. C/AS1 8.2.5, A2.1.1 Type 15
   lift motor room ............................................................ C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.16.4 c)
   lift shafts ............................................................. Protected shafts

Light  
   see Artificial Light, Natural Light, Lighting for Emergency

   Light switches ......................................................... G9/AS1 2.0.1 a) b)

   Lighting of access routes ............................................ D1/AS1 1.5.4, 1.8

   Lighting for emergency  
   see 'Visibility in Escape Routes'

Limited area atriums ........................................ C/AS1 6.22, Figure 6.14, Tables 6.4 to 6.6

Limited area intermediate floors  
   see Floors

Liquid fuel  
   see Piped Services, Hazardous Substances and Processes

Loadings  
   see Design, loadings

Loads  
   see Structure, loads

Location of heat and smoke detectors ........................................ F7/AS1 1.3

Low-risk areas ................................................................. F4/AS1 1.2.2
M

Maintenance ................................NZBC/B2.3.1, D2.3.1 (f), D2.3.4 (c), E1.3.3 (d), E2/AS1 2.5, G10.3.6, G11.3.4, G12.3.6 (d) (e), G13.3.1 (d), G13.3.2 (d), G14.3.2 (h), G15.3.2 (c);

Amend 12
Oct 2011

general.............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 2.5
normal............................................................................................................. B2/AS1 2.1
regular maintenance...................................................................................... E2/AS1 2.5.1
scheduled...................................................................................................... B2/AS1 2.2

Maintenance access to drains ........................................................................ G13/AS2 5.7
access chambers .............................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12;
G13/AS2 Figure 12
access points ................................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, G13/AS2 5.7, Figures 9 to 12
inspection chambers ...................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11;
G13/AS2 Figure 11
inspection points ............................................................................................ E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), G13/AS2 5.7, Figure 9
location........................................................................................................... G13/AS2 5.7.4
rodding points ............................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10; G13/AS2 5.7.4 fl, Figure 10

Marae
see Housing, group dwellings

Masonry
see Design, masonry
masonry buildings ...................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.1

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Masonry tiles .................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2
anti-ponding boards ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.5, Figure 25
details and flashings ..................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.6, Figures 23-28, 73D and 73E
flashings and fixings ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.4, Tables 20-22
general............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.2.2
installation ..................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.3, Tables 10, 20 and 23
materials........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.2.1
penetrations .................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.1.1

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Masonry veneer ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.3.2, 9.2, Table 18
cavities .............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.2.6, Figure 73C
control joints ................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.8, Figure 73A
clay bricks ....................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.8.1, Figure 73A
concrete bricks ............................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.2.8.2, Figure 73A
flashings ......................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.4
foundation support and damp proofing ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.8.3, Figure 73A
general............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.2.2
installation ..................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.3, Table 23, Figure 73B
limitations ...................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.1
openings .......................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.9, Table 18D
secondary cladding ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.1
wall ties .......................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.7, Tables 18A-18C
windows and doors ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.10, Figures 73C and 73D

Means of Escape
see Escape routes, Evacuation time, Exitways, Final exits,
Fire hazard category, Open paths, Safe paths, Safe place, Travel distance

Mechanical Installations for Access ............................................................. NZBC/D2.3.1 (e)
control system .............................................................................................. NZBC/D2.3.3
emergency conditions ................................................................................... NZBC/D2.3.3
escalators ...................................................................................................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (e)
lifts ................................................................................................................ NZBC/D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.2 (c), D1.3.4 (c); D1/AS1 12.0
lighting ........................................................................................................... NZBC/D2.3.2 (c)
loads .............................................................................................................. NZBC/D2.3.1 (a)
location of potentially dangerous equipment .............................................. NZBC/D2.3.4
people with disabilities ............................................................................... NZBC/D2.3.5
servicing mechanical installations .............................................................. NZBC/D2.1 (b)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical ventilation</td>
<td>see Ventilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical consultancy rooms</td>
<td>NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Communal non-residential</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membrane cappings</td>
<td>E2/AS1 6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal cappings</td>
<td>E2/AS1 6.4, 7.4.4, 9.9.10.2, Figure 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membrane roofs and decks</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butyl and EPDM</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>control joints</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gutters</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.10, Figure 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installation</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butyl and EPDM</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plywood</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>junctions</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.8, Figures 57, 58 and 61-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with walls</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.8.1, Figure 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limitations</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.1, Figure 17A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penetrations</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.9, Figures 59 and 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handrails</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plywood substrates</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roof and deck drainage</td>
<td>E2/AS1 8.5.6, Figures 56-64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixing devices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Water supply, hot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moisture</td>
<td>see External Moisture, Internal Moisture, Surface Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motels</td>
<td>D1/AS1 9.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Communal residential</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal offices</td>
<td>NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Commercial buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Museums</td>
<td>see Communal non-residential</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
N

Natural Light ........................................................................................................ G7
awareness of the outside environment ......................................................... NZBC/G7.1, G7.2, G7.3.2
minimum illuminance .................................................................................. NZBC/G7.3.1

Natural ventilation

see Ventilation

Network utility operators ........................................ NZBC/G11.3.6, G13.3.3, G15.3.3, H1.1; F1/VM1 2.1.1 f)
G14/VM1 1.2.1 a), G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2
No-sky line condition ................................................................................ G7/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 3

Non-potable water supply

see Water supply

Non-return valves .................................................................................. G12/AS1 Figures 7 to 10, Table 6

Notional boundary ............................................................................... C/AS1 7.3.13 to 7.3.15, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.7.1, Table 7.4

Nurses’ or Nursing homes

see Communal residential
O

Obstructions ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 1.5

dangerous projections .................................................. D1/AS1 1.5.4, Figure 6

isolated columns .......................................................... D1/AS1 1.5.5, Figure 7

major projections ......................................................... D1/AS1 1.5.3, Figure 5

minor projections ......................................................... D1/AS1 1.5.1, 1.5.2, Figure 4

Occupants ........................................................................ NZBC/D2.3.5 (b), G1.3.3 (e)

occupant densities ....................................................... C/AS1 2.3.3, 3.4.6 b), Table 2.2

occupant load .............................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.2 a), 2.1.1, F6/AS1 Appendix A

occupant loads – specific requirements

and limitations ......................................................... C/AS1 2.3, 3.3.2, 3.4.5, 3.4.8 c), 3.6.1 a) d), 3.9.11, 3.9.12 b) e), 3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.12.2 b), 3.15.1 d), 3.16.3 c), 3.17.9 a) Step 1 and Step 2, 4.5.15, 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.4.1, 6.20.6 a), 6.20.7 a), 6.20.19, 6.21.5 c), 6.22.2 c) d) f), B4.1.1, Tables 3.1 and 4.1

Occupied spaces ....................................................... C/AS1 3.2.1, 3.3.2 d), 6.6.7, 6.7.4, 6.22.3, Tables 2.1 and 6.2; G4/AS1 1.1.1, 1.2.1 a), G6/AS1 1.0.1 a)

Odours 

see Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste

Offices

see Commercial buildings

Oil fired appliances

installaion ................................................................. C/AS1 9.3

seismic restraint ........................................................ C/AS1 9.3.2

Old people’s homes .................................................. NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a) (b), G5.3.1 to G5.3.3, G5.3.5, G7.2, G12.3.4;

G1/AS1 Table 4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1;

G5/AS1 1.0.3, 2.0, Table 3

see also Communal residential buildings

On-site disposal .......................................................... G13/VM4 1.0

scope ................................................................. G13/VM4 1.1

Open fires ................................................................. C/AS1 9.5, Figures 9.1 and 9.3

Open paths ................................................................. F6/AS1 3.1.1 a)

see Escape routes

Opening windows ....................................................... F4/AS1 1.2

Other property ......................................................... C/AS1 4.3.2, 5.3.2 d), 6.1.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 b), 7.3.15 a), 7.7.1, 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.6 b), 7.9.10 d), Tables 6.1 and 7.3

Outbuildings ............................................................ NZBC/A1 7.0, D1.2.1, D1.3.2, D1.3.3 (h) (l), G1.3.4, G8.2, G12.3.8; G1/AS1 Table 4

Ovens

see Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, cooking

Overflow ................................................................. E3/AS1 2.0

containment ............................................................. E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1, Figure 1

floor waste ............................................................. E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2
Pedestrians  
see Access Routes

Penetrations ......................................................... C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.12.4, 6.12.9 d), 6.16.4 e), 6.17.1, 6.17.4, 6.17.5, 6.17.7, 6.18.6 c), 6.18.9, 6.20.13 a)
accessible route identification ............................................................... F8/AS1 5.0.1 a) b)
accessible routes .............................................................................. G1/AS1 4.1.1
electrical installations ........................................................................ NZBC/G9.3.4
enhanced listening systems ................................................................. NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6
facilities identification ........................................................................ F8/AS1 5.0.1 b)
food preparation and cooking facilities ................................................ NZBC/F8.3.5
information and warning signs ............................................................ NZBC/F8.2 (d), F8.3.4
listening system identification ............................................................. F8/AS1 5.0.3, Figure 7
mechanical installations for access
see Mechanical Installations for Access
personal hygiene facilities ................................................................. NZBC/G1.3.5
provision of laundering facilities ......................................................... NZBC/G2.3.4
usable water taps ............................................................................... G12/AS1 Figure 18
water supply ...................................................................................... NZBC/G12.3.9

Pergolas  
see Decks and Pergolas

Personal Hygiene ................................................................. G1; NZBC/G13.1 (a)
see also Sanitary fixtures
absence of facilities ................................................................................. NZBC/G1.1 (b)
access to facilities ................................................................................ NZBC/D1.3.3 (e), G1.3.5
location of facilities .............................................................................. NZBC/G1.3.4
non-water-borne disposal system ........................................................... NZBC/G1.3.2 (h)
overflows from sanitary fixtures .............................................................. NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4
people with disabilities ................................................................. NZBC/G1.3.5, G1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2
privacy ................................................................................................. G1/AS1 6.0

cubicles ......................................................................................... G1/AS1 6.2, Figure 11
line of sight ....................................................................................... G1/AS1 6.1, Figure 10
lobbies ............................................................................................... NZBC/G2.3.4
unisex facilities ...................................................................................... G1/AS1 6.3
privies ................................................................................................. G1/AS1 5.0.2
water-borne disposal system ............................................................... NZBC/G1.3.2 (g), G13.1 (b)

Piles  
see Foundations
Index

Piped Services ................................................................................................................. G10
extreme temperatures .................................................................................. NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
gas pipes ......................................................................................................... NZBC/G10.3.2, G10.3
hazardous substances .................................................................................... NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
identification of piping systems ................................................................. NZBC/G10.3.4
isolating devices ............................................................................................. NZBC/G10.3.5
piping systems ................................................................................................. NZBC/G10.3.1
preventing sound transmission .................................................................. G6/AS1 1.0.1 c)
protection against corrosion .......................................................................... NZBC/G10.3.3

Pipes
see also Discharge pipes, Discharge stacks, Vent pipes
installation ........................................................................................................... G11/AS1 4.0
jointing methods ............................................................................................... G13/AS1 6.1.1
materials ............................................................................................................ G13/AS1 2.1.1, Table 1
sizing .................................................................................................................. G11/AS1 1.0
pressure ranges .............................................................................................. G11/AS1 1.1
flow velocities ................................................................................................... G11/AS1 1.4
pressures above 1.5 kPa ................................................................................. G11/AS1 1.3
pressures below 1.5 kPa .................................................................................. G11/AS1 1.2
supports ........................................................................................................... G13/AS1 6.2.1, Table 7
thermal movement ......................................................................................... G13/AS1 6.3
watertightness ................................................................................................. G13/AS1 7.0

Placement of detectors .................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.4

Places of assembly .......................................................................................... D1/AS1 8.0
see also Communal non-residential

Plumbing systems
see Foul Water

Plywood sheet ........................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8

corners ............................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.4
external ............................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.8.4.1, Figure 122
Internal........................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.4.2, Figure 123

finishes ............................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.9

flashing material ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.5, Tables 20-22
installation ....................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.3, Table 23
fixings ............................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.3.1, Table 24
joints ................................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.3.2, Figures 119 and 121
limitations ....................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.1
materials .......................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.2, Figure 119

parapets and enclosed balustrades ................................................................ E2/AS1 9.8.7
soffit details ..................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.6, Figure 8A
windows and doors ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.8

direct fixed ..................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.8.1, Figure 115
with cavity ........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.8.8.2, Figure 116

Pools
see Swimming pools

Potable water supply
see Water Supplies
Pressed metal tiles ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3
 barges ...................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
 fascias ................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
 fixings .................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.7, Figure 33
 flashings .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.8, Table 7, Figures 34-37
 gutters ..................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.8, Figures 34-37
 installation ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.1
 limitations .............................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.1
 metal substrate ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4
 aluminium .............................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.4.3
 choice of metal ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4.1
 steel ......................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4.2, Table 20
 ridges ...................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
 roof penetrations .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.10, Figure 29
 roof pitch .............................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.5, Figure 32
 tiles and accessories ............................................................................ E2/AS1 8.3.3
 underlay ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.6, Table 23

Pressure limiting valves ................................................................. G12/AS1 5.3.2, 6.2.1 b), Figure 8, Table 6
Pressure reducing valves ............................................................... G12/AS1 5.3.2, 6.2.1 b), Figures 7 and 9, Table 6
Pressure regulators .................................................................................. G11/AS1 2.1
Pressure relief valves ............................................................................. G12/AS1 6.4.1, 6.6, Table 6
installation .............................................................................................. G12/AS1 6.6.5
relief valve drains ............................................................................... G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 12 and 13
Pressurisation of safe paths
see Fire safety precautions

Principal entrance ................................................................................ D1/AS1 1.1

Prisons
see Communal residential

Privacy
see Personal Hygiene

Privies
see Personal Hygiene, privies

Profiled metal roof claddings .................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4
allowance for expansion ......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.10, Table 16, Figure 39
fixings: corrugated and trapezoidal profiles ........................................... E2/AS1 8.4.8, Figure 39, Tables 11, 12, 14, 15
requirements .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.8.1
fixings: trough profile .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.9, Figure 40, Tables 13, 20, 21
flashing details ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.12, Figures 43-48
flashing requirements .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.11, Tables 21 and 22, Figures 41 and 42
fixing flashings ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.11.1, Table 21, Figure 6
general .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.2
hidden gutters ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
internal gutters ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
limitations .............................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.1
materials ................................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.3
aluminium .............................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.3.3
choice of metal ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.3.1, Table 20
steel ........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.3.2, Table 20
parallel hidden gutters .......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
profile closure ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.15
profiles .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.4, Figure 38
roof penetrations .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.17, Table 17, Figures 21 and 53-55
roof pitch ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.5
stapends ................................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.13, Figure 49
structure ................................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.6, Tables 11-15
turn-downs at gutters ......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.14
underlay ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.7, Table 23
valley gutters ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figure 51
Protecting other property

see Spread of Fire, Internal Moisture, Water Supplies

Protection of gas supply .................................................. G11/AS1 7.0
contamination ................................................................ G11/AS1 7.1
low pressures ............................................................... G11/AS1 7.2

Protection of water supplies ........................................... G12/AS1 3.4
air gaps ........................................................................ G12/AS1 3.5
backflow prevention devices ........................................ G12/AS1 3.6
atmospheric vacuum breakers ...................................... G12/AS1 3.6.2 d) 3.6.4 d), 3.7.1, Table 2
double check valves ..................................................... G12/AS1 3.6.2 b), 3.7.2, Table 2
pressure vacuum breakers .......................................... G12/AS1 3.6.2 c), 3.6.4 c), 3.7.1, Table 2
reduced pressure zone devices ..................................... G12/AS1 3.6.2 a), 3.6.4 a), 3.7.2, Table 2
cross connections ........................................................ G12/AS1 3.1, 3.2
hazard ................................................................. G12/AS1 3.3
installation ............................................................... G12/AS1 3.6.3, 3.6.4, 3.7.1
testing ....................................................................... G12/AS1 3.7

Purpose groups .... C/AS1 1.3.2 Step 3, 2.1.3, 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 3.4.2 b), 4.2.7 a c), 4.5.1, 4.5.2,
4.5.8, 4.5.13, 5.8.4, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.6, 7.11.3, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 4.1,
6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5
active purpose groups ......................................... C/AS1 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 4.4.1 Step 2, Table 4.1
concessions for multiple purpose groups ............... C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8, 5.6.11
fire hazard category 4 ................................................. C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11
primary purpose group .................................. C/AS1 2.2.2, 2.2.4, 2.2.7, 4.4.7 c), 4.4.1 Step 1, 4.5.5,
6.10.1, 6.11.1, 6.11.2
residential community care ..................................... C/AS1 2.4
sleeping purpose groups ................................... C/AS1 3.9.12 f), 3.15.1 c), 3.15.6, 4.4.1 Step 2, 4.5.11,
5.6.2 a), 5.7.9, 6.1.2 b), 7.7.1, 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.16,
7.10.5 c), A1.2.1 Type 16, Tables 4.1 and 7.4
Purpose groups (continued)

**CL** .............\textit{C/AS1} 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.16.1, 3.16.3, 3.16.7, 3.17.1 c), 3.17.9 a), 6.3, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.18 d), 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; \textit{F7/AS1} 1.3.5 b)

**CM** .............\textit{C/AS1} 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.17.1 c), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; \textit{F7/AS1} 1.3.5 b)

**CO** .............\textit{C/AS1} 3.5.3 b), 3.16.5 to 3.16.7, 4.3.3, 6.5, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

**CS** .............\textit{C/AS1} 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 2.2.7, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.3.1, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; \textit{F7/AS1} 1.3.5 b)

**IA** .............\textit{C/AS1} 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 b), 3.10.2, 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 4.3.3, 6.10, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3

**ID** .............\textit{C/AS1} 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 b), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 4.3.3, 6.11, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3

**IE** .............\textit{C/AS1} 4.3.3, 6.9, 6.20.20, 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), Tables 2.1 and 6.2

**SA** .............\textit{C/AS1} 2.2.3, 2.2.9, 2.3.6, 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.7, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.11 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; \textit{F7/AS1} 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 d)

**SC** .............\textit{C/AS1} 2.3.6, 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.16.8, 3.17.4, 3.17.9 b) d), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.6, 6.9.6, 6.11.3, 6.20.8 b), 6.20.20, 7.11 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), 7.11.1, 8.1.2, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; \textit{F7/AS1} 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 e), 2.2.3

**SD** .............\textit{C/AS1} 2.3.6, 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.16.8, 3.17.4, 3.17.9 b) d), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.6, 6.9.6, 6.11.3, 6.20.8 b), 6.20.20, 7.11 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), 7.11.1, 8.1.2, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; \textit{F7/AS1} 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 e), 2.2.3

**SH** .............\textit{C/AS1} 1.3.3, 1.3.4, 2.2.8, 2.2.9 b), 3.5.2 b) to 3.5.4 b), 3.15.1, 3.20.1, 4.3.3, 5.9.4 c), 6.8, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.20.1, 7.11 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.19, 7.10.6, 7.10.8, 7.11.4, Figure 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

**SR** .............\textit{C/AS} 1.3.5, 2.2.9 a), 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.11.6, 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 3.20.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.8, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.1, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.11 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.19, 7.10.6 to 7.10.8, A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; \textit{F7/AS1} 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b)

**WF** .............\textit{C/AS1} 3.5.2 a), 3.16.1 b), 5.8.4, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

**WH** .............\textit{C/AS1} 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 5.8.4, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

**WL** .............\textit{C/AS1} 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.22.1, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

**WM** .............\textit{C/AS1} 3.5.2 a) to 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 6.11.1, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
Radioactive substances

see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 7

Ramps ............................................................... C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.9.2, D1/AS1 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 3.0
accessible ramps ........................................ D1/AS1 3.1.3, 6.0.3 to 6.0.4, Figure 9
slopes ............................................................. D1/AS1 Table 3
width ............................................................. D1/AS1 3.2
intermediate landings ................................... D1/AS1 3.3.1, Table 5
length ............................................................ D1/AS1 3.3.3
width ............................................................. D1/AS1 3.3.2
kerb ramps ................................................... D1/AS1 3.4, Figure 10
landings ......................................................... D1/AS1 3.3, Figure 25
service ramps ............................................... D1/AS1 3.1.2, Figure 8, Table 4
slip resistance ............................................... D1/AS1 3.1.4, Table 2
slopes ............................................................. D1/AS1 3.1, 3.1.1

Reflectances .................................................. G7/AS1 Table 2
high ............................................................... G7/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1
medium .......................................................... G7/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1

Refuge areas

see Fire safety precautions

Refuse

see Solid waste

Reinforcing steel ............................................ B1/AS1 2.1, 3.1, B1/AS3 1.3.2 b) c), 1.4,
1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.8.5, 2.2.1 a), Table 1

Relevant boundaries ................................ C/AS1 2.2.8, 5.3.2 a), 5.4.1 gi, 5.7.6 a), 5.9.4 c), 7.1.2 di,
7.3.1 b), 7.3.4 to 7.3.6, 7.3.9, 7.3.12 b), 7.3.15 a),
7.4.2, 7.5 to 7.8, 7.10.5, 7.10.6, 7.11.4, Figures 7.3,
7.7 to 7.9, Tables 7.1 to 7.5

Relief valve drains

see Cold water expansion valves, Temperature relief valves,
Temperature/pressure relief valves

Retaining walls ................................................ F4/AS1 1.2.5

Retirement villages

see Communal residential

Rodding points

see Maintenance access to drains

Roof claddings ............................................. E2/AS1 8.0
general ......................................................... E2/AS1 8.1
fixings ......................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.4, Tables 20-22
gutters ......................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6, Figure 20
hidden gutters ............................................ E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, Figures 27, 37, 50, 51
internal gutters ......................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, Figures 52 and 63
valley gutters ......................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, Table 8, Figures 27, 37, 50 and 51
limitations ................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.2
maintenance ............................................... E2/AS1 8.1.3
projecting eaves ....................................... E2/AS1 8.1.3.1
Roof claddings (continued)

roof penetrations .................................. E2/AS1 8.1.7, Tables 9 and 17, Figures 21 and 22, 29-31
underlays .............................................. E2/AS1 8.1.5, Table 23, Figure 25(b)
underlay support ..................................... E2/AS1 8.1.5.1
weathertightness ..................................... E2/AS1 8.1.1

Roof/wall junctions ........................................ E2/AS1 5.0
apron flashings ...................................... E2/AS1 5.1, Table 7, Figures 7, 8B and 35
barges ..................................................... E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
fascias ................................................. E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
gutters .................................................. E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
soffits ..................................................... E2/AS1 5.3, Figures 8A and 114

6.20.5, 6.20.11, 7.2.1 b), 7.8.1, 7.9.1 to 7.9.9, Figures 7.1 and 7.11;
car parking and storage ............................ C/AS1 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17
eaves and projections (fire safety) .............. C/AS1 2.2.8, 7.8.3 to 7.8.5
exterior surface finishes .......................... C/AS1 7.11.1
fire spread ............................................. C/AS1 7.1.1, 7.9.1, 7.9.2
fire venting ........................................... C/AS1 4.2.4, 5.4.1 i), 5.5.3, 6.3.2 b), 7.8.10 a)
open sided buildings ............................... C/AS1 7.8.8, 7.8.9, 7.8.10, Figure 7.10
roof spaces ........................................... C/AS1 6.12.8, 6.18.5 b) c), 6.18.7, 6.18.8, 6.18.10

Rubbish chutes
see Solid Waste

Run-off

estimation of run-off .................................... E1/VM1 2.0
Rational Method ...................................... E1/VM1 2.0.1
rainfall intensity ..................................... E1/VM1 2.2, E1/AS1 Appendix A
run-off coefficient .................................... E1/VM1 2.1, Table 1
slope correction ....................................... E1/VM1 2.1.3, Table 2
time of concentration .............................. E1/VM1 2.2.1, 2.3
alternative procedure ............................... E1/VM1 2.3.6, 2.3.7
catchment slopes .................................... E1/VM1 2.3.7
open channel flow .................................... E1/VM1 2.3.5
pipe flow .............................................. E1/VM1 2.3.4, Table 1
time of entry ......................................... E1/VM1 2.3.2
overland flow ........................................ E1/VM1 2.3.2 b), Figure 1
road channel flow ................................... E1/VM1 2.3.2 b), Figure 2
time of network flow ............................... E1/VM1 2.3.3
Index

NEW ZEALAND BUILDING CODE HANDBOOK

S

S rating
see Fire resistance ratings

Safe paths .............................................................. F7/AS1 1.3.1, 1.3.4; F8/AS1 3.2.3 b)
see also Escape routes

Safe place......................................................... NZBC/F7.3, F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1 3.1.1, 3.7.1, 3.16.4, 3.16.8, 6.1.1, 6.2.2.7,
A2.1.1 Type 13 and Type 16

Safe trays
see Storage water heaters

Safe water temperatures
see Water Supplies, hot

Safety from Falling .................................................. F4
see also Barriers
accidental falls....................................................... NZBC/F4.2
children ................................................................. NZBC/F4.3.4 (f), F4/AS1 1.2.1, Figures 1-4
gates ........................................................................ NZBC/F4.3.5 (a)
impact of people .................................................... NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)
low risk areas ......................................................... F4/AS1 1.2.2

Amend 11
Sep 2010

pressure of people ................................................ NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)

Amend 11
Sep 2010

opening windows .................................................. F4/AS1 2.0

Amend 11
Sep 2010

provision of barriers .............................................. NZBC/F4.3.1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

retaining walls ........................................................ F4/AS1 1.2.5

Amend 11
Sep 2010

roofs with permanent access .................................. NZBC/F4.3.2

Amend 11
Sep 2010

seats on decks ....................................................... F4/AS1 1.2.4, Figure 6

Amend 11
Sep 2010

swimming pools .................................................... NZBC/F4.3.3, F4.3.5

fencing ..................................................................... F4/AS1 2.7

Safety of users
see Hazardous Agents on Site, Hazardous Building Materials,
Hazardous Substances and Processes, Safety from Falling, Construction
and Demolition Hazards, Lighting for Emergency, Warning Systems, Signs

Sanitary appliances ................................................. NZBC/G13.2, G12/AS1 8.0.1, Table 1;
G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2
washing machines .................................................... G13/AS1 Figure 2, Table 2

Sanitary fixtures ..................................................... NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4, G1.3.1, G1.3.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5,
G12.3.6 (b), G13.2; G12/AS1 6.12.1, 6.14.2, Figure 20;
Tables 1 and 3; G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2
see also Basins, Bidets, Personal Hygiene, Showers, Urinals, WC pans
acceptable standards .............................................. G1/AS1 2.6
access pans ................................................................ G1/AS1 4.2.7
people with disabilities ......................................... G1/AS1 1.2.2, 4.1
basins ...................................................................... G1/AS1 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1
bidets ....................................................................... G1/AS1 2.4
communal sanitary fixtures ..................................... G1/AS1 3.4
construction and installation .................................. G1/AS1 2.0
locations ................................................................. G1/AS1 3.0, 4.2.1

non-flushing sanitary fixtures ................................. G1/AS1 5.0
prives ...................................................................... G1/AS1 5.0.2
number of fixtures required ................................... G1/AS1 1.0, Figure 1, Tables 1 to 4

sanitary towel disposal .......................................... G1/AS1 1.1.5 b), 1.2, 1.2.2
showers ................................................................. G1/AS1 2.5, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2
soil fixtures ............................................................. G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
see also WC pans
space dimensions .................................................. G1/AS1 3.1, 4.2.2, 6.2.1, Figures 4 to 9
toilets see WC pans
types of fixtures required ....................................... G1/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2
Sanitary fixtures (continued)

urinals .......................................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1
bowl urinals ...................................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
continuous wall urinals ................................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, Figure 3
discharge system ........................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.2
flushing systems ............................................................................ G1/AS1 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
manually operated ........................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.8
stall urinals ..................................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.5
surface finishes ............................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.4
trough urinals .................................................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1 to 2.3.3

Sanitation

see Personal Hygiene

Schools

see Communal non-residential

SDI

see Smoke developed index

Seating .................. C/AS1 2.3.5, 3.3.2 k), 3.3.6 c), 3.9.3, 3.9.4, 3.9.7 to 3.9.11, 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Tables 2.2 and 3.4
open air auditoriums (purpose group CO) ........................................ C/AS1 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1

Seats on decks ................................................................................ F4/AS1 1.2.4, Figure 6

Security ............................................................................................ NZBC/G14.3.2 (g); G14/VM1 1.9, G14/AS1 1.1

Seismic resistance of engineering systems ....................................... B1/VM1 13.0

Serviceability limit states

see Structure, limit states

Services and facilities

see Personal Hygiene, Laundering, Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, Ventilation, Interior Environment, Airborne and Impact Sound, Natural Light, Artificial Light, Electricity, Piped Services, Gas as an Energy Source, Water Supply, Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste

Sewers

see Foul Water

SFI

see Spread of flame index

Sheds

see Outbuildings

Shops

see Commercial buildings

Showers .................. E3/AS1 3.2, 3.2.2, 3.3, Figures 4 and 5; G1/AS1 2.5, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2, G13/AS1 Table 2

Shrinkage

see Structure, loads

Signs ................................................. F8; NZBC/C2.3.3, D1.3.4 (a), D2.3.2 (d); C/AS1 3.3.6 (a), 3.17.11 (d), D1/AS1 1.1.1
escape routes .................................................................................. NZBC/F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a)
exit ..................................................................................................... F8/AS1 3.0
alternative exit .................................................................................. F8/AS1 3.2.3 (b)
arrow ............................................................................................... F8/AS1 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
backgrounds .................................................................................... F8/AS1 3.3.3
colours ............................................................................................. F8/AS1 2.1, 3.4, 3.5.3 a) b), 4.1.3, Table 3
illumination ....................................................................................... F8/AS1 3.5
externally illuminated ..................................................................... F8/AS1 3.5.2
internally illuminated ...................................................................... F8/AS1 3.5.3
lighting supply ................................................................................ F8/AS1 3.5.5
self-luminous ................................................................................... F8/AS1 3.5.4
lettering ............................................................................................ F8/AS1 3.3.1, Table 4
location ............................................................................................ F8/AS1 3.1
no exit signs ..................................................................................... F8/AS1 3.2.3 (a)
wording ............................................................................................ F8/AS1 3.2
Signs; escape routes (continued)

- fire safety ........................................ .......................................................... F8/AS1 4.0, 6.4
- call points .......................................................... F8/AS1 4.1, Figure 4
- colours .......................................................... F8/AS1 4.1.3
- fire and smoke control doors .......................................................... F8/AS1 4.2
- lifts.......................................................... F8/AS1 6.4.1
- stairs for Fire Service personnel .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.4.3, Figures 12 and 13
- storage heights .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.4.2, Figure 11
- hazard signs .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.0
- dangerous goods .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1
- class 1.......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 2 .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 3 .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 4 .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 5 .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 7 .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- colour .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4 a
- radiation warning symbol .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4 a, Figure 8
- colour .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.3
- layout .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.3
- lettering .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.3
- location .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- electrical hazards .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.2, Figure 9
- escalators and moving walks .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.6, Figure 15
- floor loadings .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.3
- buildings .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.3.1, Figure 10
- lifts .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.3.2
- passenger lifts .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.3.2 a
- service lifts .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.3.2 b
- hazardous substances and processes .................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (g)
- identification of hazards .......................................................... NZBC/F8.2 (e), F8.3.2
- machine rooms .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.5, Figure 14
- non-potable water .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.7, Figure 16
- lighting for emergency .......................................................... NZBC/F6.3.2, F8.3.3 (b)
- people with disabilities .......................................................... NZBC/F8.2 (d), F8.3.4, F8/AS1 5.0
- access symbol .......................................................... F8/AS1 5.0.2 c, Figure 6
- layout .......................................................... F8/AS1 5.0.2, Figure 5
- listening systems .......................................................... F8/AS1 5.0.3, Figure 7
- readability .......................................................... NZBC/F8.3.1
- lettering type and proportions .......................................................... F8/AS1 1.0, Table 1
- safety .......................................................... F8/AS1 1.0.3, 2.0, Figure 1
- caution .......................................................... F8/AS1 2.2.2, 6.1.2, 6.2.2, Figure 2
- colours .......................................................... F8/AS1 2.2.1, Table 3
- layout .......................................................... F8/AS1 2.2, Figure 2
- prohibition and stop signs .......................................................... F8/AS1 2.2.1, 6.7.1, Figure 1
- safe condition signs .......................................................... F8/AS1 2.2.3
- safety symbols .......................................................... F8/AS1 2.3
- visibility .......................................................... NZBC/F8.3.1, F8.3.3 (b)

Single escape routes

see Escape routes

Sinks .......................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3; G3/AS1 1.1.5, G13/AS1 Table 2
see also Basins, Cleaners' sinks, Kitchen sinks

Site characteristics .......................................................... B1/VM4 Appendix A

Site investigation .......................................................... B1/VM4 3.5.1, 4.7.1, Appendix A; F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.0, Figure 1
analysis .......................................................... F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.0, Figure 1
assessment .......................................................... F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.5, Figure 2
detailed investigation .......................................................... B1/VM4 A1.3, F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.3
history and records .......................................................... F1/VM1 2.1
preliminary investigation .......................................................... B1/VM4 A1.2, F1/VM1 1.0.2 b), 2.2
previous industrial use of site .......................................................... F1/VM1 2.1.1, Table 1
recording information .......................................................... B1/VM4 A1.4

Site specific considerations .......................................................... B2/VM1 1.2
Siteworks
  see Design, siteworks

Slip resistance
  D1/VM1 1.0, D1/AS1 2.1, 3.1.4, 4.1.4 c), Table 2

Slopes
  D1/AS1 1.2
  acceptable slopes
  D1/AS1 1.2.1, Figure 2
  changes in level
  D1/AS1 1.3, 1.3.1
  cross falls
  D1/AS1 1.2.2

Slope stability
  B1/VM4 1.0.4

Small chimneys
  see Chimneys

Smoke
  NZBC/C3.3.1, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, C3.3.7, C3.3.8

Smoke alarms
  F7/AS1 3.1.1, 3.1.2
  alarm system
  F7/AS1 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4
  location
  F7/AS1 3.3.1, 3.3.2
  maintenance
  F7/AS1 3.4.1

Smoke control
  C/AS1 3.11.9, 6.19.1, 6.19.12, 6.19.13, Table 6.1
  see also Fire safety precautions

car parking
  C/AS1 6.10.4 b), 6.10.6

doors
  see Doors
  in air handling systems
    see Fire safety precautions
  intermediate floors
    C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 4.5.18, 6.21.3, 6.21.4
  limited area atriums
    C/AS1 4.5.18, 6.21.4 b), 6.22.1,
      6.22.7, 6.22.8, Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
  long corridors
    C/AS1 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
  mechanical smoke extract
    see Fire safety precautions
  natural smoke venting
    see Fire safety precautions
  pressurisation
    see Fire safety precautions

smoke reservoirs
  C/AS1 6.22.2 fl, 6.22.5, 6.22.7 to 6.22.10,
  A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11,
    Figure 6.14, Table 6.4

systems
  C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 4.5.18, 6.21.5, 6.23.3 a),
  A2.1.1 Type 9, Type 10 Type 11 Type 17, B1.1.1,
  B2.2.1 Step 2, B3.1.1
  ventilation
  C/AS1 3.14.7, 6.9.6 to 6.9.8, 6.10.6
  vertical safe paths
  C/AS1 6.9.11, Figure 6.1

Smokecells
  C/AS1 3.4.6 b), 4.2.2, 6.1.2 a), 6.4.1, 6.9.1, 6.12.4

Smoke detectors
  see Fire safety precautions

Smoke developed index (SDI)
  C/AS1 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d),
  C4.1.1 d), Table 6.2

Smoke separations
  C/AS1 3.8.3 b), 3.11.1, 3.17.12 b), 6.1.2 c), 6.3.1, 6.6.4 b),
  6.6.6 b), 6.9.6 e), 6.9.11, 6.10.1, 6.12.3, 6.12.4, 6.12.9,
  6.13.1, 6.19.1, Table 6.1

smoke seals
  C/AS1 5.8.9

Smoke spread
  see Smoke control

Snow
  see Structure, loads
Socket outlets
  see Electricity, people with disabilities

Soil fixtures .......................................................... G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
  see also WC pans

Soil properties ..................................................... B1/VM4 1.0.5, 2.0.6, 2.0.7, Appendix A

Soil shrinkage and expansion ................................ B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3, A1.2.1

Soils
  adverse moisture conditions ................................ B1/VM4 1.0.2

Solar water heaters ................................................. G12
  installation ........................................................ G12/AS2 5.0
  pipe installation ................................................. G12/AS2 5.3
  pipe insulation ................................................... G12/AS2 5.4
  weathertightness ................................................. G12/AS2 5.2, Table 4, Figures 2–9
  wetback water heaters ........................................ G12/AS2 5.1
  location ............................................................. G12/AS2 4.0, 4.1
  solar orientation and inclination ....................... G12/AS2 4.2, Figure 2
  maintenance and durability ............................... G12/AS2 7.0
  durability .......................................................... G12/AS2 7.2
  maintenance ...................................................... G12/AS2 7.1
  materials ........................................................... G12/AS2 2.0
  material selection ............................................. G12/AS2 2.1, Tables 1, 2 and 3
  operating and safety devices ............................. G12/AS2 3.0
  protection from frosts ....................................... G12/AS2 3.4
  protection from Legionella bacteria ................ G12/AS2 3.6, Figure 1
  protection ................................................................
  sizing of systems ............................................. G12/AS2 3.3
  solar controller .................................................. G12/AS2 3.2
  solar water heaters and components ................ G12/AS2 3.1.1
  solar water heaters ............................................ G12/AS2 3.1.0
  exclusions ........................................................ G12/AS2 1.0
  structural support limitations ........................ G12/AS2 1.1
  structural support ............................................. G12/AS2 6.0
  collector support rails ...................................... G12/AS2 6.5, Figures 17 and 18
  elevated solar collectors parallel to the roof .......... G12/AS2 6.4, Figures 14–16
  general requirements ......................................... G12/AS2 6.2, Figures 10–13
  mounting collectors at different pitch to roof cladding.. G12/AS2 6.6,
  scope ................................................................. G12/AS2 6.1

Solid fuel appliances .............................................. B1/AS1 2.0
  domestic ........................................................... B1/AS1 2.0
  installation ....................................................... C/AS1 9.1
  seismic restraint .............................................. C/AS1 9.1.2

Solid plastering ..................................................... B2/AS1 3.3

Solid Waste .......................................................... G15
  chutes ............................................................. C/AS1 3.12.1, 6.16.5, 6.16.6
  collection ........................................................ NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1
  holding ............................................................ NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1
  sewer ............................................................... NZBC/G15.3.3
  storage ............................................................ C/AS1 3.12.1, G15/AS1 1.0.1, 3.0, 3.0, Figure 1
  alternative solution ......................................... G15/AS1 3.1
  capacity .......................................................... G15/AS1 1.0.1
  location .......................................................... G15/AS1 2.0.1
  floors ............................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.2
  walls ............................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.3
  water supply .................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.7
  windows .......................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.4, 3.0.6
  space required ................................................ G15/AS1 1.0.2
  vehicle access ................................................ G15/AS1 3.0.10
  ventilation ...................................................... G15/AS1 1.0.3, 3.0.8, 3.0.9
  temperature .................................................... NZBC/G15.3.1 (d)
  waste disposal units ......................................... NZBC/G15.3.3
waste (rubbish) chutes ........................................ NZBC/G15.3.2; G15/AS1 4.0, Figure 2
 cleaning ................................................................. G15/AS1 4.0.3
 odours ........................................................................ NZBC/G15.3.2 (d)
 restricted access .................................................. NZBC/G15.3.2 (g)
 spread of fire ........................................................ NZBC/G15.3.2 (e)

Sound insulation tests
 see Airborne and Impact Sound

Sound transmission class (STC)
 see Airborne and Impact Sound

Spandrels ............................................................. C/AS1 7.1.2 e), 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2

Specified intended life
 see Durability

Spread of Fire
 automatic fire suppression systems .......................................................... NZBC/C3.3.6
 see also Fire safety precautions
 automatic smoke control systems .......................................................... NZBC/C3.3.8
 see also Smoke control
 concealed spaces ........................................................................ NZBC/C3.3.4
 protect adjacent property ................................................................. NZBC/C3.1 (c), C3.2 (c)
 resistant to spread of fire ................................................................. NZBC/C2.3.3, C3.3.1
 rubbish chutes ............................................................................. NZBC/G15.3.2
 safeguard the environment ......................................................... NZBC/C3.1 (d), C3.2 (d)
 safety while evacuating ................................................................. NZBC/C3.1 (a)
 see also Means of Escape

Spread of flame index (SFI) ........................................ C/AS1 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d), C4.1.1 b), Table 6.2

Sprinklers
 see Fire safety precautions

Stability
 see Fire resistance ratings, Structure

Stadiums
 see Communal non-residential

Staircase
 see Stairways

Stairs
 see Stairways

Stairs and ladders............................................. C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.4.1 a), 3.4.7, 3.9.14, 3.15.9, Figures 3.6, 3.10 and 3.21
curved and spiral stairs ...................................................... C/AS1 3.3.5, 3.4.7 a) b)
stairways................. C/AS1 3.3.3, 3.3.4, 3.3.6 b), 3.4.5, 3.11.8, 3.12.3, 3.15.6, 5.8.2 c),
  6.5.3, 6.9.10, 7.5.7

Stairways.................................................. NZBC/D1.3.2 (f) to (i), D1.3.4 (g) (h); D1/AS1 4.0
 see also Access Routes, accessible routes and ladders
accessible stairs............................................... D1/AS1 4.1.7, 4.1.8 b), 4.2.1,
  6.0.1 to 6.0.4, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8
common stairs .................................................. D1/AS1 4.1.8, 4.2.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8
curved stairs..................................................... D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4, Figure 17
landings ............................................................ D1/AS1 4.3, 4.3.1, 4.3.6 c), 4.6.2 c), Figures 14 and 25
direction changes ................................................ D1/AS1 4.3.2, Figure 16
length ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.4, 4.3.6 c)
maximum rise .................................................. D1/AS1 4.3.2, Table 7
obstructions ...................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.5, Figure 15
width ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.3
lighting ............................................................. D1/AS1 4.6, 4.6.2, Table 8
pitch ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.1, Figure 11, Table 6
pitch lines ......................................................... D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4.1, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, 4.5.2
Storage water heaters .................................................. D1/AS1 4.6.2, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8
main ................................................................................. D1/AS1 Figure 11, Table 6
minor ................................................................................. D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6
risers ................................................................................. D1/AS1 4.1, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.1.8, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, Figures 11 and 12, Table 6
secondary ........................................................................... D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6
service stairs ................................................................. D1/AS1 4.1, 4.1.4 c), Table 2
spiral stairs ................................................................. D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4.1
treads ................................................................................. D1/AS1 4.1, 4.1.2 to 4.1.7, 4.5.1, 4.6, Figures 11 to 13, Table 6
tapered treads ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.4, Figure 17
visibility .............................................................................. D1/AS1 4.3.6, 4.6, Table 8, G8/AS1 1.0.3
width ................................................................................. D1/AS1 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.4.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 6.0.1
winders ................................................................................. D1/AS1 4.5, Figure 18

Standard test
see Test methods

Steel
see Design, steel

Storage water heaters ............................................ NZBC/H1.3.4; G12/AS1 6.2, 6.3.1, 6.6.3, 6.6.5, 6.7.2, 6.6.4, 6.8 to 6.11, Table 5; H1/AS1 5.0

see also Water heaters
drain pipes ........................................................................... G12/AS1 6.11.3 c)
o pen vented ........................................................................... G12/AS1 6.3.2, Figures 6 and 7
free outlet type ....................................................................... G12/AS1 6.1.2, 6.4.2
mains pressure supply .................................................. G12/AS1 6.2.1, Figure 8, Table 5
tank supply ........................................................................... G12/AS1 6.1.1, Figure 6, Table 5
safe trays .............................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.3, 6.11.3
seismic restraint .......................................................... G12/AS1 6.11.5, Figure 4
vented
see Storage water heaters, vented
valve vented ........................................................................... G12/AS1 6.3 to 6.7, Figure 8

Storage water tanks
see Tanks

Strainers (filters) ............................................................. G12/AS1 6.2.3

Structural fire endurance rating (S)
see Fire resistance ratings

Structural integrity
see Structure, Structural Stability During Fire

Structural Stability During Fire

consequential collapse ................................................... NZBC/C4.3.3
fire hazards ........................................................................ NZBC/C4.3.1
fire intensity ........................................................................ NZBC/C4.3.1
fire load .............................................................................. NZBC/C4.3.1
fire resistance ................................................................. NZBC/C4.3.1, C4.3.2, C4.3.3

Structural stability
see Fire resistance ratings

Structure
see Fire resistance ratings

building instability ......................................................... NZBC/B1.1
collapse ........................................................................... NZBC/B1.2
damage .............................................................................. NZBC/B1.2
deflections ................................................................. NZBC/B1.2
demolition ......................................................................... NZBC/B1.3.6
design
concrete .............................................................................. B1/VM1 3.0
drains
see Drains
foundations
see Foundations

loadings .............................................................................. B1/VM1 2.0
earthquake ........................................................................ B1/AS3 1.9, Table 2
limit state ............................................................................ B1/VM1 2.2.4, 7.1
Structure (continued)

masonry .................................................. B1/VM1 4.0, B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 1.3.3
siteworks .................................................. B1/VM1 10.0
steel ........................................................ B1/VM1 5.0
strength reduction factor ......................... B1/VM4 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4
timber ..................................................... B1/VM1 6.0, B1/AS1 3.0

see also Timber barriers
windows
see Windows

failure................................................. NZBC/B1.1
limit states
serviceability limit state ............................ NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.5
ultimate limit state ................................. NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.5
loads ....................................................... NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.3
cyclic loads .............................................. NZBC/B1.3.3
differential movement ............................. NZBC/B1.3.3
dynamic loads ........................................ NZBC/B1.3.3
earth pressure ......................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
earthquake .............................................. NZBC/B1.3.3
seismic restraint ...................................... G14/VM1 2.3.2
seismic resistance of building services ......... B1/VM1 14.0
explosion ................................................ NZBC/B1.3.3
liquid ...................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
shrinkage ............................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
snow ....................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
wind ...................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
sitework .................................................. NZBC/B1.3.6, B1.3.7
stability ............................................... NZBC/B1.3.6, B2.3.1, D1/AS1 1.6
tanks ...................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
non-rigid plaster backings ......................... E2/AS1 9.3.5
rigid plaster backings ............................. E2/AS1 9.3.6
fibre cement sheet backing ...................... E2/AS1 9.3.6.2
plywood backing ..................................... E2/AS1 9.3.6.1
parapets and enclosed balustrades .............. E2/AS1 9.3.9
installation of wall underlays ................. E2/AS1 9.3.5.1, Table 23
stucco cladding system ......................... E2/AS1 9.3.3, Tables 23 and 24, Figure 74
windows and doors ............................... E2/AS1 9.3.10, Figure 76

Subsidence ............................................ B1/VM4 A1.2.1 (a)

Suites
see Firecells

Surface finishes ..................................... C/AS1 6.1.2 e), 6.20, Tables 6.2 and 6.3
ceilings .................................................. C/AS1 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a)
exceptions ............................................. C/AS1 6.20.4
exterior surfaces ................................... C/AS1 7.1.2 c), 7.8.6, 7.11
flooring and floor coverings .................... C/AS1 6.20.8 to 6.20.10, 6.20.14, C2.1
wharenui .............................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 2.2
Surface Water ................................................................. E1
see also Run-off, drains
2% probability storm
(50 year return period) ......................................................... NZBC/E1.3.1
10% probability storm
(10 year return period) ......................................................... NZBC/E1.3.2
drainage systems ................................................................ NZBC/E1.3.3
Suspended flexible fabrics ........................................ C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.16 to 6.20.19, C3.1, Table 6.2
Swimming pools
see Safety from Falling

T

Tanks
industrial liquid waste ................................................. G14/VM1 1.4.1 b), 1.4.2, 3.0
seismic restraint ............................................................ G14/VM1 3.2.1
water tanks ................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2, 6.2.1
access ........................................................................ G12/AS1 5.2.5, Figure 4
covers ......................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.4
location ........................................................................ G12/AS1 5.2.1
overflow pipes .............................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.2, Figure 4
safe trays ...................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.3, Figure 4
seismic restraint ......................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
structural support ....................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
water storage tanks ....................................................... G12/AS1 5.1

Taverns
see Communal non-residential

Temperature
see Electricity, Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment, Outbreak of Fire, Piped Services, Solid Waste, Structure, load, Water Supplies

Temperature control
see Interior Environment, interior temperature

Temperature/pressure relief valves ........................................ G12/AS1 6.4.1, Figure 8, Table 6
installation ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.6.5
relief valve drains ........................................................ G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 12 and 13

Test methods ......................................................................... C/AS1 Appendix C

fire properties of external wall cladding systems ....................... C/AS1 C8.1
fire resistance ................................................................. C/AS1 C6.1
fire resisting closures ................................................... C/AS1 C7.1
flame barriers .............................................................. C/AS1 C9.1
flammmability of floor coverings .................................. C/AS1 C2.1
flammmability of membrane structures ......................... C/AS1 C3.1
flammmability of suspended flexible fabrics ................. C/AS1 C3.1
non-combustibility of materials ........................................ C/AS1 C5.1
properties of lining materials ...................................... C/AS1 C4.1

Theatres ........................................................................ NZBC/G5.3.5
see also Communal non-residential

Thermal break .......................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)
Thermal resistance (R-value) ........................................ E3/AS1 1.1, H1/VM1 1.4, H1/AS1 2.1.1, 2.2, 2.3
alternative solution .................................................. E3/AS1 1.1.5
materials and installation ........................................ E3/AS1 1.1.3
Thermostats ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.3.1, 6.5.1

Thresholds ................................................................. D1/AS1 1.3.2

Timber .......................................................................... B2/AS1 3.2
see also Design, timber, Timber weatherboards
Index

Timber barriers ........................................................................................................... B1/AS2 1.0
see also Barriers and Safety from Falling

Timber weatherboards............................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.4

horizontal weatherboards .................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.1.3, 9.4.4

external corners ..................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.4, Figures 77 and 78

fixings ..................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.3, Table 24

horizontal laps ..................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.1

internal corners ................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.5, Figure 79

joints ...................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.2

installation ............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.3, Table 23

fixings ..................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.3.1, Tables 20 and 24

limitations ............................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.4.1

horizontal weatherboards ................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.1

vertical weatherboards ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.2, Table 3

weatherboard profiles .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.1.1

materials .............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.2, Table 23

parapets and enclosed balustrades ...................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.8

vertical weatherboards ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.1.2, 9.4.5

corners (external and internal) ............................................................................ E2/AS1 9.4.5.3, Table 7, Figures 79 and 80

fixings ..................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.5.2, Table 24

laps ......................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.5.1

windows and doors in cavity walls .................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.7, Figures 17C, 85 and 86

windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards .......................................... E2/AS1 9.4.6,

Figures 17D, 81-84

Time-share accommodation
see Communal residential

Toilets
see Personal Hygiene, WC Pans

Toxic substances
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 6

Transport terminals
see Commercial buildings

Travel distance ...................................................................................................... NZBC/C2.3.1 (d), C2.3.2, C3.3.1 (a)

Tunnels
see Ancillary buildings

Turnstiles
see Doors
U

Ultimate limit states
    see Structure, limit states

Universities
    see Communal non-residential

Unprotected areas ................................................. C/AS1 3.14.3, 3.14.6, 5.1.1 b), 7.1.2 d), 7.3, 7.4.1 a),
    7.4.2, 7.5.2 to 7.5.6, 7.5.8, 7.6.4, 7.7.1, 7.7.3, 7.7.5,
    Step 2 and Step 3, 7.8.9, 7.8.10 c), 7.9.10, 7.9.11,
    7.9.13, Figures 7.3 to 7.5, Tables 7.2 to 7.4

fire resisting glazing (Type B) ........................................ C/AS1 5.8.2 a), 7.4.1 a),
    7.4.2 to 7.4.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1

small openings (Type A) ........................................... C/AS1 7.4.1 a), 7.4.2, 7.4.4, Figure 7.4

uPVC pipe .................................................................................. G13/AS3 1.0

Urinals ............................................................... E3/AS1 3.3, 3.3.6; G1/AS1 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1; G13/AS1 Table 2

bowl urinals ................................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5

continuous wall urinals ................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, Figure 3

discharge system ......................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.2

flushing systems ......................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5

manually operated ..................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.8

stall urinals ................................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.5

surface finishes ......................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.4

trough urinals ............................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1 to 2.3.3

Utensil washing .......................................................... G3/AS1 1.1.1
Vacuum relief valves ....................................................................................... G12/AS1 Table 6

Vehicles ................................................................................................. NZBC/D1.1, D1.2.2, D1.3.1 (d) (e), D1.3.5, G14.3.2 (b);
          D1/AS1 10.0, G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5; G15/AS1 3.0.10
access ........................................................................................................ G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5
car parking areas ............................................................................. D1/AS1 10.1
accessible car parking spaces ........................................ D1/AS1 10.1, 10.2.1
commercial vehicles ........................................................................ D1/AS1 11.0.2
loading spaces .................................................................................. D1/AS1 11.0.2

Vent pipes ................................................. G12/AS1 6.3.2, 6.8; G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 12, Table 5;
          G13/AS2 Figures 5 and 6
diameter ......................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.8.2, G13/AS1 Table 6
fixture vent pipes ............................................................................. G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11, Tables 5 and 6
gradient ......................................................................................... G13/AS1 5.4
height ............................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.8.2 d)
installation ....................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.9.1, G13/AS1 5.5 to 5.7, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11
insulation .......................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.8.3
relief vent pipes .............................................................................. G13/AS1 5.6, Figure 7
termination ........................................................................................ G12/AS1 6.8.2 c); G13/AS1 5.7.3, Figure 12

Ventilation ................................................. G4; NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); C/AS1 6.9.6, E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2;
          air control ................................................................................. NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1 3.0, G4/AS1 1.5.1 b
air handling systems ........................................................................ G4/AS1 1.3.1 b
air purity ............................................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/VM1 2.0
bacteria, pathogens and allergens ................................................ NZBC/G4.3.2
balconies, bridges and open stairways ........................................ C/AS1 3.14.7
car park .............................................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.4
combined natural and mechanical .............................................. G4/AS1 1.4
contaminated air
          discharge systems ...................................................................... G4/AS1 1.5.1 f)
doing .................................................................................................... NZBC/G4.3.4
removal .............................................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.3
cross-ventilation for car parking ................................................ C/AS1 6.10.4, 6.10.6
drains ................................................................................................. G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
extract ventilation ........................................................................... G4/AS1 1.5.1 c
fixed combustion appliances ......................................................... NZBC/G4.3.5
flues ................................................................................................. G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4

gas burning appliances .................................................................. C/AS1 9.2.2

gas-fuel appliances ......................................................................... G4/AS1 2.0
another solution .............................................................................. G4/AS1 2.0
draught diverters ............................................................................. G4/AS1 2.3.2
flue construction .............................................................................. G4/AS1 2.3
flue location on dwellings ............................................................ G4/AS1 2.4
mechanical ventilation ................................................................... G4/AS1 2.2
natural ventilation .......................................................................... G4/AS1 2.1
maximum occupancy ...................................................................... NZBC/G4.2
mechanical ventilation systems ...................................................... NZBC/C3.3.7, G4.3.2; G4/AS1 1.5, 2.2
natural ............................................................................................... G4/AS1 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2.1
household units and accommodation units with one external wall ... G4/AS1 1.3
natural smoke ventilation
          see Fire safety precautions
number of air changes ....................................................................... NZBC/G4.3.1
oil fired appliances ............................................................................ C/AS1 9.3.2
outdoor air supply ........................................................................... NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/AS1 1.5.1 a) d)
passive stack ventilators ............................................................... G4/AS1 1.3.7
positive and negative pressure ...................................................... G4/AS1 1.5.5
prevention of internal moisture ..................................................... NZBC/E3.3.1
rate ..................................................................................................... G4/VM1 1.0.1
recirculated air systems .................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.1 e)
safe paths ........................................................................................ C/AS1 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
solid fuel appliances ........................................................................ C/AS1 9.1.2
trickle ventilators ............................................................................. G4/AS1 1.3.9
ventilation rate ................................................................................ G4/VM1 1.0
Vermin-proofing ........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.8.3

Vibrations
see Structure

Visibility in Escape Routes .............................................................. F6/AS1
duration ........................................................................................................ F6/AS1 1.6
documentation .................................................................................... F6/AS1 1.7
equipment ................................................................................................. F6/AS1 1.8
illuminance .............................................................................................. F6/AS1 1.3
installation ................................................................................................. F6/AS1 1.8
location ....................................................................................................... F6/AS1 1.2
maintenance ............................................................................................. F6/AS1 1.8
method of measurement ........................................................................ F6/AS1 1.4
modifications to AS 2293.1: 2005 and AS 2293.3: 2005 ........... F6/AS1 Appendix B
modifications to NZS 6104 ...................................................................... F6/AS1 Appendix C
light output ............................................................................................... F6/AS1 1.5
scope ......................................................................................................... F6/AS1 1.1
start-up .................................................................................................... F6/AS1 1.5

W

Walls..................................................NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), C3.3.1, C3.3.5, E2.3.2, E2.3.3, E3.3.4, E3.3.5, G6.3.1;
C/AS1 5.3.1, 5.7.2, 6.10.6, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.16.2, 6.18.5(c), 6.20.3,
6.20.4 (d) f), 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 (a), 7.8.9,
7.9.5, 7.9.8, Table 6.2;
cavities and concealed spaces .......................................................... C/AS1 6.18.4, Figures 6.11 and 6.12
curtain walls ............................................................................................ C/AS1 6.18.4, 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
eexternal walls ........................................................................................... NZBC/E2.3.2
see also Unprotected areas
floor/wall junctions .................................................................................. G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 5
internal/external wall junctions .............................................................. G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 4
surface finishes ....................................................................................... NZBC/C3.3.1
theatre proscenium walls ................................................................. C/AS1 6.3.1, 6.3.2 (f), 6.19.9, 6.19.10, 6.19.11, Figure 6.13
wall assemblies .......................................................................................... G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 2

Wall/Roof junctions
see Roof/wall junctions

Wall claddings ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 3.3, 9.0
air seals ...................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.6, Figure 81
barriers to airflow .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.4, Table 23
bottom of cladding ................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.3, Tables 7 and 18, Figure 65
cementitious claddings............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.8.3, Figure 66
cementitious claddings (except masonry veneer) ....................... E2/AS1 9.1.3.1, Table 18
garages and openings to garages ...................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.3.4, Tables 18 and 23, Figure 65
masonry veneer clearances ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.3.2, Table 18, Figure 73D
timber floor framing ............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.3.5, Table 18
drained cavities ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8

cavity battens ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.4
limitations ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.1
requirements ........................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.2, Table 23, Figures 66 and 67
vermin-proofing .................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.3, Figure 66
wall framing behind cavities ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.5
general .................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1
limitations ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.1, Table 3
maintenance .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.2
penetrations ............................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.9
inter-storey junctions ............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.9.4, Figure 70
other cavity penetrations ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.9.2
penetrations through cavities ............................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.9.1
pipes and service penetrations ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.9.3, Figures 68 and 69
wall underlay ........................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.7, Tables 3 and 23
wall underlays to wall openings ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.5, Figures 72A and 72B
Wall claddings (continued)
windows and doors................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.10
attachments ............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.10.3
head flashings ......................................................................... E2/AS1 9.10.7
scope ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.10.1
window and door heads ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.10.3, Figure 71
window and door sills ........................................................... E2/AS1 9.10.6
window sills............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D

Warehouses
see Industrial buildings

Warning Systems ...................................................................... F7
see also Alarm systems ......................................................... NZBC/F7.3

Wash-down areas ..................................................................... G3/AS1 2.3

Washing machines
see Sanitary appliances

Waste chutes
see Solid Waste

Waste disposal units............................................................... NZBC/G15.3.3; G13/AS1 Figure 2, Table 2

Waste pipes
see Discharge pipes, Pipes

Water
see External Moisture, Foul Water, Internal Moisture, Surface Water,

Water Supplies

Water heaters ............................................................................. G12/AS1 6.1, Table 5
installation ................................................................................. G12/AS1 6.11
instantaneous water heaters .................................................... G12/AS1 6.11,
solar water heaters .................................................................... G12/AS1 6.11, 6.15, Table 5
storage water heaters
see Storage water heaters
wet back water heaters ............................................................. G12/AS1 6.13, Figure 15

Water main............................................................................... G12/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1

Water seals .............................................................................. G1/AS1 2.1.1 c), Figure 2; G13/AS1 1.0.3, 3.2.1, Figure 1, Table 1,
G13/AS2 3.3.1 d)

Water splash ............................................................................ E3/AS1 3.0
basins ....................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
baths ....................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
lining materials .......................................................................... E3/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
joints in linings ........................................................................ E3/AS1 3.2, Figure 2
shower ..................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5
sinks ......................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
tubs ......................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
urinals ....................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.6

Water Supplies .......................................................................... G12
access for maintenance .......................................................... NZBC/G12.3.6 (d)
backflow prevention devices .................................................. NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)
cold ......................................................................................... G3/AS1 1.1.4
drinking water ......................................................................... NZBC/G12.2
ergy efficiency ......................................................................... NZBC/H1.2, H1.3.4
hot ......................................................................................... G3/AS1 1.1.4, Figure 1; G12/AS1 6.0
mixing devices
tempering valves ..................................................................... G12/AS1 6.14.2, Figure 16
pipe sizes ............................................................................... G12/AS1 6.12, Table 4
safe water temperatures ......................................................... G12/AS1 6.14
isolation of system .................................................................. NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)
leakage .................................................................................... NZBC/G12.3.6 (c)
laundries ................................................................................. G2/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2
mains ...................................................................................... G12/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1
non-potable water .......................... NZBC/G12.3.2; G12/AS1 4.1
outlet identification .......................................................... G12/AS1 4.2.1, Figure 3
people with disabilities .......................... NZBC/G12.3.9
potable water .......................................................... NZBC/G12.3.1, G12.3.8 (a), G14.3.2 (c);
pressure vessels .......................................................... NZBC/G12.1 (b), G12.3.7 (a)
sanitary appliances .......................................................... NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.4 G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)
sanitary fixtures .......................................................... NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.4 G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)
solid waste areas .......................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.7, 4.0.3
water storage vessels .......................................................... NZBC/G12.3.7, G12.3.8
see also Storage water heaters
water temperature .................................. NZBC/G12.1 (b) (c), G12.3.3 to G12.3.5, G12.3.7 (b), G12.3.8

Water supply systems .......................................................... G12/VM1 1.0, G12/AS1 5.0
installation .......................................................... G12/AS1 5.2
anchor points .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.1.2
electrochemical compatibility .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.1.1
in concrete or masonry .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.3.3
pipe supports .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.1
spacing .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.1.3, Table 7
pipes below ground .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.3.2
protection from damage .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.5
protection from freezing .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.2
protection from frosts .......................................................... G12/AS1 3.6.3
maintenance facilities .......................................................... G12/AS1 5.2
materials .......................................................... G12/AS1 2.0, Table 1
pressure limitations .......................................................... G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)
temperature limitations .......................................................... G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)
pipe size .......................................................... G12/AS1 5.3, Table 4
flow rates .......................................................... G12/AS1 5.3.1, Table 3
waterness .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.5

Water tanks
see Tanks

Water traps .......................................................... G13/AS1 3.0, Figure 1
dimensions .......................................................... G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figure 1
location .......................................................... G13/AS1 3.3
multiple outlets .......................................................... G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2

WC pans .......................................................... G1/AS1 2.1, 3.1.1, 4.2.2, Figures 4 to 6, Table 1;
G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figures 1 and 6, Tables 2 and 5,
cisterns .......................................................... G1/AS1 2.2.2
cubicles .......................................................... G1/AS1 6.2, Figure 11
flushing systems .......................................................... G1/AS1 2.1.1 f), 2.2, 4.2.6
surface finish .......................................................... G1/AS1 2.1.1 a
water seals .......................................................... G1/AS1 2.1.1 c), Figure 2

Weather stops .......................................................... D1/AS1 1.3.2

Weatherboards
see Timber weatherboards and fibre cement weatherboards

Weathertightness .......................................................... E2/AS1 2.1, 8.1.1

Weathertightness risk factors .......................................................... E2/AS1 3.0
establishing the risk .......................................................... E2/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
building envelope risk scores .......................................................... G13/AS1 2.0, Table 1
examples .......................................................... E2/AS1 3.4, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.3, Tables 4-6, Figures 2-4
definitions of risk .......................................................... E2/AS1 3.1.1, Table 1
risk score .......................................................... E2/AS1 3.1.2, Table 2

Wall claddings .......................................................... E2/AS1 3.3, Table 3

Where Runanga
see Communal non-residential, assembly service
Wheelchairs ................................................................. D1/AS1 7.0.1

see also People with disabilities, Accessible routes
spaces for wheelchairs ........................................... D1/AS1 8.1, 8.1.2, Figure 30
wheelchair access .................................................... NZBC/D1.3.4 (b) (d) (e)

Wind

see Structure, loads

Windows and doors.... B1/VM1 12.0; C/AS1 3.1.4, 6.20.4 c); E2/AS1 9.1.10, 9.2.10, 9.3.10,
9.5.4, 9.6.8.6, 9.6.9.7, 9.7.6, 9.8.8, 9.9.9; G7/AS1 1.0.1 to 1.0.3, 2.0.1,
G15/AS1 3.0.4, 3.0.6

see also Natural Light
closed cell foam tape ............................................. E2/AS1 9.1.10.7
fire windows

see Glazing
glazing ............................................................... B1/AS1 7.0
head flashings .................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
scope ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
treatment of opening.............................. E2/AS1 9.1.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B and 116, Tables 7 and 20
used for escape..................................................... C/AS1 3.3.6 d), 3.18, 6.20.6 b), Figure 3.32
vertical profile: windows and doors........... E2/AS1 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100
window and door heads .................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
windows and doors in cavity walls ............. E2/AS1 9.4.7, 9.5.4.2, 9.8.8.2, 9.9.9,
Figures 85, 86, 91, 116 and 128
windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards .. E2/AS1 9.4.6, 9.5.4.1, 9.8.8.1,
9.9.9, Figures 81-84, 90, 115 and 127
window and door jambs ....................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.6, Table 7
window and door sills .......................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D

Work camps .......................................................... NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d);
G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1

see also Communal residential, community service